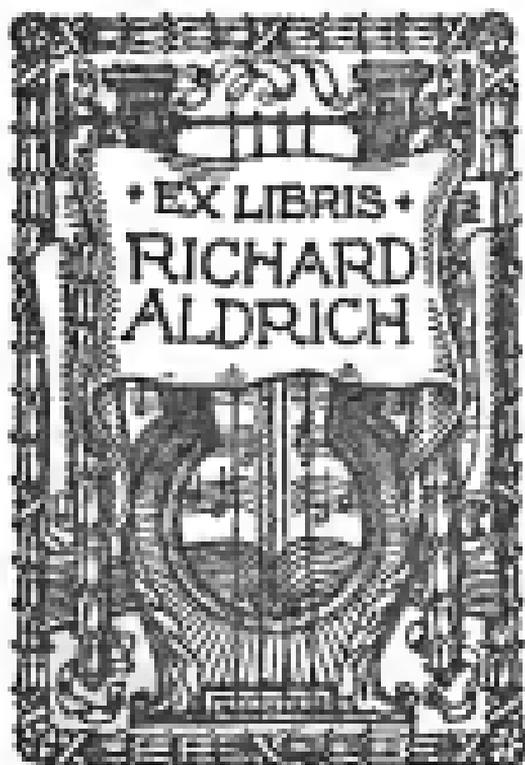


Proceedings of the Musical Association

Musical
Association (Great
Britain)



HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

MUSIC LIBRARY



IN CONNECTION WITH THE INTERNATIONALE
MUSIKGESELLSCHAFT.

PROCEEDINGS
OF THE
MUSICAL ASSOCIATION

FOR THE INVESTIGATION AND
DISCUSSION OF SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH THE
ART AND SCIENCE OF MUSIC.

FOUNDED MAY 29, 1874.

TWENTY-SEVENTH SESSION, 1900-1901.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

LONDON:
NOVELLO AND CO., LIMITED, 5, BERNERS STREET, W.

1901

CONTENTS.

"ON THE MUSICAL INTRODUCTIONS FOUND IN CERTAIN MEDICAL PRACTICES." By SIR JOHN STAINER, M.D.	1
THE TEACHING OF HARMONY AS A BASIS OF EAR TRAINING." By FRANK J. SAWYER, M.D.	11
"THE BALNEARIA." By ALEXANDER S. BOSS	23
"MUSIC AND MUSICIANS OF THE WALLON PROVINCES OF BELGIUM." By W. W. CORBETT	37
"THE CHURCH RECORDERS." By JOSEPH C. BRIDGE, M.D.	109
"A 17TH CENTURY VIEW OF MEDICAL EDUCATION." By SIR FREDERICK BRIDGE, M.D.	121
"THE AESTHETIC TREATMENT OF BACH'S ORGAN MUSIC." By H. HEATHCOTE STYTHAM	132
"MUSICIAN' EAR." By MISS MARGA A. ELLIS	171
"CHROMATICISM IN HARMONY." By HERBERT WHITNEY, M.D.	182

DEB-93



4

Aut 30 (2.2(27))

✓

RULES AND REGULATIONS

Passed at Six Special General Meetings, held on February 7 and April 3, 1876, on January 6, 1879, on December 6, 1886, on June 2, 1890, and on January 7, 1895.

OBJECTS AND CONSTITUTION.

1. This Association is called the "Musical Association" and is formed for the investigation and discussion of subjects connected with the Art, Science, and History of Music; and is intended to be similar in its organization to existing Learned Societies.

It is not intended that the Association shall give concerts, or undertake any publications other than those of their own Proceedings, or the Papers read at their Meetings.

MEMBERS.

2. The Association shall consist of practical and theoretical musicians, as well as those whose researches have been directed to the science of acoustics, the history of the art, or other kindred subjects.

Any person desirous of being admitted into the Association must be proposed by two members. Foreigners resident abroad and distinguished in the Art, Science, or Literature of Music may be nominated by the Council for election as Honorary Members of the Association.

Elections will take place by ballot of the members present at any of the ordinary meetings, and one adverse vote in four shall exclude.

No newly elected member shall be entitled to attend the meetings until the annual subscription be paid.

SUBSCRIPTION.

3. The annual subscription to the Association is one guinea, which shall become due on the 1st of November in each year.

Any member may, upon or at any time after election, become a life member of the Association by payment of a composition of £20 10s. in lieu of future annual subscriptions, but in addition to any annual subscription previously paid or due from such member. Such sums shall from time to time be invested in legal security in the names of Trustees, to be appointed by the Council.

Any member intending to resign his membership shall signify his wish by notice in writing to the Secretary on or before the 31st of October, otherwise he shall be liable for his subscription for the ensuing year.

MEETINGS.

4. An ordinary meeting shall be held on the second Tuesday in every month, from November to June inclusive, at 3 P.M., when, after the despatch of ordinary business, Papers will be read and discussed, the reading to commence not before 3.20 P.M.

5. An annual general meeting of members only shall be held at the end of the financial year, to receive and deliberate on the Report of the Council, and to elect the Council and officers for the ensuing year.

6. Special general meetings may be summoned whenever the Council may consider it necessary; and they shall be at all times bound to do so on receiving a requisition in writing from five members, specifying the nature of the business to be transacted. At least one week's notice of such special meeting shall be given by circular to every member, and ten members present at any general meeting shall constitute a quorum.

7. Every member shall have the privilege of introducing one visitor at the ordinary meetings, on writing the name in a book provided for that purpose, or sending a written order.

COMMUNICATIONS.

8. Papers proposed to be read at the meetings may treat of any subject connected with the Art, Science, or History of Music, Acoustics, and other kindred subjects.

Papers will be received from or through any member of the Association.

Experiments and performances may be introduced, when limited to the illustration of the Paper read.

9. All communications read will become the property of the Association (unless there shall have been some previous arrangements to the contrary), and the Council may publish the same in any way and at any time they may think proper.

REPORTS.

10. A Report of the Proceedings of the Association, including the Papers read or abstracts of the same, and abstracts of the Discussions, shall be printed and distributed to the members as soon as possible after the end of each session.

This Report will be arranged and edited by the Secretary, under the direction of the Council.

COUNCIL AND OFFICERS.

11. The management of the affairs of the Association shall be vested in a Council, to be elected by ballot at the general meeting of the members.

The Council shall consist of a President, Vice-Presidents, and ten ordinary members of the Association.

The Secretary of the Association shall be ex officio an ordinary member of Council.

The President, Vice-Presidents, Auditors, and five ordinary members of the Council shall retire every year, but shall be eligible for re-election.

12. At the annual general meeting, the Council shall present a balloting list, showing the names of the persons

whom they propose for the offices of President, Vice-Presidents, and ordinary members of Council for the ensuing year. A copy of this list shall be given to each member present.

In voting, each member may erase any name or names from the balloting list, and may substitute the name or names of any other person or persons whom he considers eligible for each respective office; but the number of names on the list, after such erasures or substitutions, must not exceed the number to be elected to the respective offices as above enumerated. Those lists which do not accord with these directions shall be rejected.

The Chairman of the meeting shall cause the balloting papers to be collected, and after they have been examined by himself and two scrutineers, to be appointed by the members, he shall report to the meeting the result of such examination, and shall then destroy the balloting papers. Auditors shall be appointed at the annual general meeting by the members, and the statement of accounts shall be sent by the Treasurer to the Auditors, and be verified by them to the Secretary in time to enable the Council to judge of the prospects of the Association, and to prepare their report in accordance therewith.

13. The Council and officers shall meet as often as the business of the Association may require, and at every meeting three members of Council shall constitute a quorum.

ENACTMENT OR ALTERATION OF RULES AND REGULATIONS.

14. No rules and regulations can be enacted, altered, or rescinded, except at a special meeting of members summoned for the express purpose, the summons stating distinctly and fully the matter to be brought under consideration.

MUSICAL ASSOCIATION.

(IN CONNECTION WITH THE INTERNATIONALE MUSIKGESELLSCHAFT.)
FOR THE INVESTIGATION AND DISCUSSION OF SUBJECTS
CONNECTED WITH THE ART AND SCIENCE OF MUSIC.

FOUNDED MAY 29, 1894

COUNCIL, PRESIDENT.

VICE-PRESIDENTS.

AGNEW, WILLIAM GUYLLA, Esq., M.A., F.R.S., Professor King's College
BOUCHOURT, R. H. M., Esq., M.A., F.R.S., F.R.C.S.
BAYLY, Sir FREDERICK, Mus. Doc., Organ., Deputy of Westminster Abbey,
Graham Prof. of Music.
CARR, GEORGE F., Esq., M.A., Feli. Trin. Coll., Camb.
COMPTON, W. H., Esq., Mus. D., Dub., F.R.S., Hon. R.A.M., Principal
Musical School of Bonn.
GARDNER, MURPHY, Esq., M.D. (Hon.)
GOLDSCHMIDT, OTTO, Esq.
HARRIS, JAMES, Esq., Mus. Soc., Organ., Mus. Doc., Cantuar.
MAYNARD, WALTER, Esq.
MAYNARD, GEORGE, Esq., M.A., Mus. Doc., Organ.
PARRY, Sir C. HENRY H., M.A., D.C.L., Mus. Doc., Organ., Cantuar., of
Delm., Prof. Mus. Trin. Coll., Director of the Royal College of Music.
FRANK, E., Esq., M.A., Lond., Hon. Soc. Dub. et Edin., Prof. Mus. Dub. Univ.
BIRMINGHAM, Hon. Soc. M.A.
STANTON, CHARLES WILLIAMS, Esq., Mus. Doc., Cantuar. of Oxon. M.A.,
D.C.L., Prof. Mus. Trin. Camb.

ORDINARY MEMBERS OF COUNCIL.

BALCH, J. FRANK, Esq. (Secretary).
BARR, C. A., Esq., M.A.
COMPTON, W. W., Esq.
HALL, GEORGE H., Esq., B.Sc., Mus. Soc., Lond.
FOSTER, MELAN H., Esq., F.R.S.M.
MAYLAND, J. A. FULLER, Esq., M.A.
MAYNARD, W. G., Esq., F.R.S.M., Mus. Doc., Cantuar.
FRANK, CHARLES W., Esq., Mus. Doc., Cantuar.
FRANKLAND, A. H. D., Esq., M.A.
SOUTHWATE, THOMAS LEE, Esq.
WILSON, F. CONYNGHAM, Esq., M.A., Mus. Soc., Organ.

TRUSTEES.

Dr FREDERICK HARRIS | Otto GOLDSCHMIDT, Esq.
J. F. R. STUBBS, Esq., B.C.L.

HON. TREASURER.

A. H. D. FRANKLAND, Esq.

HON. AUDITORS.

Dr. JAMES HARRIS, Esq.
Dr. C. BOWLER.

HON. SOLICITOR.

ARTHUR T. COMPTON, Esq.

SECRETARY AND ASSISTANT TREASURER.

J. FRANK BARR, Esq., 45, High Road, Lon. S.W.

HONORARY FOREIGN MEMBERS.

Assoc. Prof. Dr. Guido (Venice)
 Giovanni, Maurizio F. A. (Brescia)
 Romano, Dr. Hugo, M.D., M.D., Ph.D., Göttingen (Leipzig)
 Salsola, Honorary Surgeon (Minsk)

LIFE MEMBERS.

- Alexander, Lecky, Esq.
 *Blake, J. Percy, Esq., M.A., B. Sc., Dublin, A.R.A.M. (Secretary)
 No. 20, 21, Captain John, Esq.
 *Blair, David James, Esq. (Vice Auditor)
 Beaumont, F. H. M., Esq., M.A., F.R.S.E., F.R.C.S., Fellow of St. John's
 College, Oxon. (Vice President)
 Bradley, F. B., Esq.
 Clerk, St. James
 *Cooper, Edward E., Esq.
 Fitzroy, Dublin, Esq.
 *Haber, M. H., Esq., M.A., M.D., Oxon.
 Levy, F. St. John, Esq., A.R.A.M.
 *Latham, Martin, Esq., M.A., M.D., Cantab., J.P.
 Shary, H. Garville, Esq., (Colony)
 Mann, Frederick G., Esq., Mus. Doc., Dublin, A.R.C.M., F.R.C.O.
 Spenceman, W. Hugh, Esq.
 *Manser, J. F. B., Esq., M.A., B.C.L. (Treasurer)
 *Wick, C., Esq., M.A.
 *Wood, F. Cunningham, Esq., M.A., Mus. Doc., Oxon.

MEMBERS.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Alexander, Frank H., Esq., Mus.
 Doc., Oxon.
 Adams, W. Grylls, Esq., M.A.,
 F.R.S., Professor, King's College
 (Vice-President)
 *Aikin, W. A., Esq., M.D.
 *Albright, J. H., Esq.
 Alcock, John, Esq.
 Anthonys, Miss Florence G.
 *Barnes, John Francis, Esq.,
 F.R.S.M.
 *Barr, C. A., Esq., M.A.
 *Barnes, Mrs. F. A.
 *Baxter, Frederick N., Esq., Mus.D.,
 Dublin, F.R.C.O.
 Beale, Frederick H., Esq.
 Bellam, Oliver G., Esq.
 Brough, Rev. E. B., M.A., Mus.
 Doc., Oxon.
 *Browne, Leonard G., Esq.
 Bruce, W. Hastings, Esq.
 *Burdock, J. E., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Oxon., F.R.C.O.
 *Burrows, A. W. M., Esq., J.P.
 *Cavendish, C., Esq., M.A., LL.D.,
 Mus. Doc., Dublin (Vice Auditor)
 *Clegg, Mr. Frederick, Mus. Doc.,
 Oxon., Organist, Westminster
 Abbey (Vice President & Treasurer)
 *Coles, W. H., Esq.
 *Copp, H. E., Esq.
 *Crosby, Percy S., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Lond., F.R.C.O.</p> | <p>Brookland, Oliver G., Esq., Mus.D.,
 Dublin.
 Brown, Rev. Marjorie E.
 Browder, Mrs. J. M. B.
 Bruce, George F., Esq., F.R.C.O.
 *Bunton, Edward Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Cantab. (Secretary)
 *Bunting, Richard, Esq.
 *Burgess, Francis, Esq.
 *Butler, Walter, Esq.
 *Crompton, F. J., Esq., LL.D.
 Currah, Francis F. F., Esq.
 *Cutt, Rev. Henry
 *Carter, Miss Margaret, L.F.A.M.,
 A.R.C.M.
 *Chamberlaine, Miss E. A.
 *Clark, Miss Adelaide E.
 Clark, Robert, Jun., Esq.
 *Clouston, Mrs. Clara H., A.R.C.M.
 *Clemson, G. A., Esq.
 *Cobb, Gerald F., Esq., M.A., J.P.,
 Col., Cantab. (Vice President)
 *Cobbold, W. W., Esq.
 Colford, John C., Esq.
 *Covey, Chas. T. D., Esq.
 *Cotton, Norman, Esq.
 *Cotwick, James O., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 T.C.D. (Dublin)
 *Cromarty, W. H., Esq., Mus.D.,
 Dub., F.R.S., Principal, Giffarth
 School Mus. (Vice-President)
 *Crosby, J. B., Esq., F.R.A.M.</p> |
|---|--|

- Dele, C. J., Esq.
 *Derry, Henry, Esq. (Belfast).
 Devlin, Murray, Esq., L.R.A.M.
 Daymond, Miss Emily B. (Cont.).
 Mac E. Esq., A.R.C.M.
 *DeLoraine, Arnold, Esq.
 *Donglas, Colonel.
- *Edgar, Clifford B., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Lond., E. Esq.
 *Edwards, F. G., Esq., F.R.A.M.
 *Egan, Miss Katherine E. (Hon.).
 *Ellis, Miss Arthur, Esq.
 Evans, J. M., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Lond., (Sydney, N.S.W.).
 *Evans, Colonel, Esq.
- Fagoband, Miss E. M., L.R.A.M.
 *Fitzroy, Miss Phoebe, A.R.C.M.
 Fisher, T. Denney, Esq.
 *Flanagan, W. F., Esq. (Dublin).
 *Florman, Miss H., L.R.A.M.
 Foster, Miles Hubert, Esq., F.R.A.M.
 Fox, Arthur M., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Lond., A.R.C.M.
- *Gale, Rev. F. W., M.A., F.R.S.
 Gayer, Murray, Esq., M.D., Hon.
 (Fur. President).
 Gardner, Charles, Esq., L.R.A.M.
 Gaskell, Joseph, Esq.
 *Gaulthier, Gen., Esq. (Fur.
 President and Treasurer).
- *Gaulthier, A. M., Esq., M.A., Mus.
 Doc., Cantab. (Esq.).
 *Gaulthier, F., Esq. (Dublin).
 Gower, J. H., Esq., Mus. Doc., Gen.
 Genl. Adm., Esq., L.R.M., Mus. Doc.,
 Cantab.
 Gray, Miss Helen
 Gray, Miss Ida, F.R.C.O., A.R.C.M.
 *Griffin, Ralph, Esq.
- *Harling, H. A., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Camb. (Honorary).
 Harri, Richard, Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Camb., F.R.C.O.
 Harrow, Walter, Esq., M.A., Mus. Doc.,
 Camb.
- Harvey, E. A., Esq. (Dublin).
 Havelgal, Oronchides A., Esq.
 Havelgal, Rev. Emma, M.A.
 *Hawley, Rev. Percy D.
 *Hawley, George, Esq.
 *Hobson, The Rev. F. H., M.A.
 (Cambridge).
 Hooper, Miss Florence G. E., Mus.
 Doc., Lond.
- *Hogg, James, Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Camb., Mus. Doc., Cantab. (Fur.
 President).
- Hill, Arthur G., Esq., M.A., F.R.S.
 *Hill, Cyril P., Esq.
 *Holland, Thomas, Esq.
 Hope, Robert Charles, Esq., F.R.A.,
 F.R.S.L. (St. Albans).
 Hope-Jones, R., Esq., M.L.C.E.
 Hopkins, Mrs. Leonard.
 Hulson, F. Everett W., Esq., Mus.
 Doc., Camb.
- Humphrey, George F., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Cantab.
 Hurdie, H. A., Esq., A.R.A.M.
- *Kennedy, Frances, Mrs. (Edinburgh).
 *Kilmer, W. J., Esq.
 *Kilmer, R., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Cantab.
 *Kilward, A., Esq.
 Knox, Frederick D., Esq.
- Langley, George, Esq.
 *Larn, Gen., Esq.
 Larn, Miss Alice M., L.R.A.M.,
 A.R.C.M.
- *Latt, Thomas, Esq.
 Leake, Alfred H., Esq.
 *Lloyd, Chas. H., Esq., M.A., Mus.
 Doc., Camb. (Windsor).
 *Lowe, C. Agerton, Esq.
- *Mackenzie, Walter, Esq. (Fur.
 President).
 *Mackenzie, Charles, Esq., M.A., Mus.
 Doc., Camb. (Fur. President).
 *Mackintosh, J. A. Foster, Esq., M.A.,
 F.R.S.
 Madden, Ernest O. M., Esq.
 *Maggie, Saml. S., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
 Camb.
- *Maitland, James K., Esq.
 *McMillan, John, Esq.
 *McNaughton, W. G., Esq., F.R.A.M.,
 Mus. Doc., Cantab.
 *Mason, J. A., Esq. (Edinburgh).
 *Meadley, Charles, Esq., M.P.
 *Meekins, Theo., Esq.
- *Meyer, Edward W., Esq., M.A.,
 Mus. Doc., Cantab.
 *Middleton, Mrs. Alice A., A.R.A.M.,
 L.R.A.M., A.R.C.M.
 *Mintzberg, Mrs. Henry.
 *Mitchell, Horace William, Esq.
 *Morris, F., Esq., Mus. Doc., Dub.,
 Prof. Mus. Univ. Edin.
- *O'Donnoghue, Miss C.

- *Farr, Sir C. Hubert H., M.B., D.C.,
Dean, Council of Dalhousie, Prof.
Mus. Univ. Oxf., Director Roy.
Coll. Mus. (Phys. Paradisi).
FARRISON, Miss Anna W., B.A.,
Mus. H., R.U.I.
- *FARRIS, Chas. W., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
Council
FARRON, J. W., Esq. (Margate)
FARR, Alfred T., Esq.
- *FARROW, A. H. G., Esq.,
M.A.
FARROW, Miss Olivia, A.R.S.M.
- *FARRE, E., Esq., B.A., Lond., Mus.
Doc., Teak. at Edin., Prof. Mus.
Univ. Dub. (Phys. Paradisi).
- FARRELL, Gen. Albert
FARRELL, Right Honourable Lord,
M.A., F.R.S. (Phys. Paradisi).
- *FARRE, H. Thomas, Esq.
FARRELL, W. J., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
Lond. (Manchester).
- *FARR, James F., Esq.
- *FARRIS, Frederick, Esq., M.A.,
Mus. H., Oxon.
- *FARRIS, Maurice, Esq.
- Far Loper, Wm. Douglas, Esq.
(Oxford).
- *FARRELL, Francis G., Esq., Mus. B.,
Oxon., F.R.C.D., A.R.C.M.
- *FARRIS, Frank J., Esq., Mus. Doc.,
Oxon. (Phys. Paradisi).
- *FARRINGTON, Miss Kathleen.
FARRINGTON, Col. T. D.
- *FARRIS, Jas. S., Esq., B.A.
FARRIS, W. J., Esq., M.D.
- *FARRINGTON, J. W., Esq., M.F., Mus.
Doc., Oxon.
FARRIS, Miss Harriet Vaughan,
A.R.C.M. (Mrs. H. Stamford Proct.)
FARRIS, Miss Grace M., I. R.A.M.
FARRIS, W. Frederick, Esq.
- *FARRIS, Miss Isabella Grace,
I.R.A.M.
- *FARRINGTON, Thos. Lew, Esq.,
Inspector-Librarian, Rev. S. E. L.,
M.A.—Mus. Rec., Oxon.
- *FARRIS, W. Barclay, Esq., B.A.,
F.R.S., R.U.I.
- *FARRIS, G. William, Esq., M.A.,
Mus. Doc., Council of Oxon.,
Prof. Mus. Univ. Camb. (Phys.
Paradisi).
- *FARRIS, H. Hamilton, Esq.
- *FARRIS, Alex. Esq., I. R.A.M.
(Glasgow)
- *FARRINGTON, Arthur H. Fox, Esq.
FARRINGTON, E. A., Esq., B.A.
Secret. Mus.
FARRIS, Marston, Esq., Mus. Rec.,
Dundee, F.R.C.G.
- Taylor, Franklin, Esq. (Windsor).
Taylor, John, Esq.
- *TAYLOR, Nedley, Esq., M.A., Treas.
Coll. Camb.
- *TAYLOR, R. A., Esq.
TAYLOR, John, Esq.
TAYLOR, Miss E. M., I. R.A.M.
TAYLOR, Lady Sybil
TAYLOR, Donald Francis, Esq.
TAYLOR, George S. T., Esq.
TAYLOR, John, Esq.
TAYLOR, E. M., Esq. (Mus. H.), Council.
- *TAYLOR, Miss
*TAYLOR, E. S. Harcourt, Esq.
*TAYLOR, A., Esq.
- *TAYLOR, M. S., Esq.
TAYLOR, William, Esq.
- *TAYLOR, John, Esq., Mus. Doc.,
Dublin
- *TAYLOR, H., Esq., Mus. Doc., Council.
(Manchester).
- *TAYLOR, Gilbert, Esq.
TAYLOR, Mrs. C. A., I. R.A.M.
(Dublin)
- *TAYLOR, Edward T., Esq.
(Dublin)
- *TAYLOR, W., Esq., M.A.
- *TAYLOR, Miss Whitbread, A.R.C.M.
(Newcastle on Tyne).
- *TAYLOR, Herbert, Esq., Mus. B.,
Lond.
- *TAYLOR, Mrs. A. T. C. L. (Leicester).
TAYLOR, A., Esq.
- *TAYLOR, C. F. Moly, Esq., M.A.,
Mus. Doc., Council of Oxon.
TAYLOR, Emma Wynn, Esq.
TAYLOR, Miss S. M.
- *TAYLOR, Miss E. A.
TAYLOR, Miss Sophia L.
- *TAYLOR, H. Elin, Esq., M.A.
Grade Prof. Fine Arts, Council.
- *TAYLOR, Miss (S. S. Widdell).
TAYLOR, Cecil H., Esq.
TAYLOR, Dan, Esq. (Paris).
- *TAYLOR, Mrs. Hugh A.
TAYLOR, Harry G., Esq.

Those who are also Members of the International Music Congresses are
indicated by an * to their names.

MUSICAL ASSOCIATION.

TWENTY-SIXTH SESSION, 1899-1900

REPORT.

THE ANNUAL GENERAL MEETING WAS HELD ON TUESDAY,
17TH NOVEMBER, 1900, AT THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF
ORGANISTS.

Sir JOHN STAINER in the Chair.

The following Report of the Council was read by the Secretary—

The Council beg leave to present to the Annual General Meeting, in accordance with Rule 3, their Report of the 26th Session, 1899-1900.

In the course of the Session, papers have been read by Mr. Joseph Gaddard, Dr. W. G. McNaught, Mrs. Henry Newmarch, Mr. John S. Burgess, Professor Niska, Mr. J. W. Warren, Dr. W. H. Cummings, and Mr. J. P. R. Stainer; and the Council desire to record their high appreciation of the generosity with which these able writers have placed the results of their thought and research at the service of the Association. The papers with the discussions thereon have been printed and distributed as usual to the members.

A connection has been formed between the Musical Association and the Internationale Musikgesellschaft (International Musical Society), a Society recently inaugurated in Berlin for the formation in various countries of local Associations having similar objects to those of the Musical Association, and held in mutual communication by monthly and quarterly publications common to the whole in several languages. Negotiations between the Council of the Association and the English Committee of the Internationale Musikgesellschaft resulted in the Association agreeing to act under certain conditions as the London Branch of this organization, the arrangements being finally ratified at a Special General Meeting held on 17th February, 1900. The Council wish to point out to members and their friends the greatly increased facility thus afforded for gathering information and the results of research on musical subjects from all parts of the world, and they appreciate a steady development of the means employed for attaining this end. They are pleased to announce that no fewer than seventy-four ladies and gentlemen have already taken advantage of the special terms applicable to those who belong to both Societies, while others are about to join.

The membership has increased during the year and the strength of the Association has been well maintained.

The Council have, with great regret, to record the loss by death of Sir George Green, C.B., Mr. George Cockle, M.A., M.A.B. Oxon., Mr. Harrison Haynes, and Dr. James Taylor, New College, Oxford.

The Finances are in a very satisfactory condition, for notwithstanding that heavy exceptional expenses have been incurred, the balance is hard as still over £50, while, in addition, £30 has been expended in raising the invested funds to the sum of £500 Consols.

In accordance with the Rules, the President and Vice-Presidents retire from office. Five ordinary Members of Council, Mr. W. W. Cobben, Mr. Myles H. Foster, Dr. W. G. McNaught, Dr. Charles Vincent, and Mr. F. Cunningham Woods also retire by rotation. All the above officers are eligible, but Dr. Vincent does not offer himself for re-election. The Council submit the following nominations:—The President and Vice-Presidents as before, and the retiring Ordinary Members of Council as before, but with Mr. J. A. Fuller Maitland replacing Dr. Vincent. Members are however reminded of their right to make, in accordance with Rule 12, any other nomination they choose. The rule is as follows:—

"In voting, each member may insert any name or names from the holding list and may substitute the name or names of any other person or persons whom he considers eligible for each respective office; but the number of names on the list after such change or substitution must not exceed the number to be elected to the respective office as above enumerated. Those lists which do not accord with these directions shall be rejected."

On the motion of Mr. Blackley, seconded by Mr. W. H. Bonner, the Report was adopted.

The Hon. Treasurer's Statement of Accounts was laid before the Meeting, and passed unanimously, on the motion of Mr. C. Welch, seconded by Mr. Arthur Fox.

Dr. Maclean moved, Mr. Bonner seconded, and it was resolved: "That the General Meeting approves of the action of the Council in having, as a special case, on the 26th June, 1900, admitted Mr. W. H. Hadow to be a joint life member of the two connected Societies."

The retiring Officers were re-elected, with the exception of Dr. Vincent, who did not offer himself for re-election. Mr. J. A. Fuller Maitland was elected an Ordinary Member of Council.

The Meeting closed with votes of thanks to the Officers and to the Chairman.

NOTICE.

Papers or short communications for the Monthly Meetings are required from or through Members; these and suggestions as to suitable subjects and capable writers will be gladly considered by the Council.

Members are desired to make the Association and its objects as widely known as possible. The Secretary will forward Prospectuses and Nomination Forms on application.

Members preferring to do so can pay their subscriptions through their Bankers. A form for this purpose may be obtained of the Secretary.

Any change of address should be promptly notified to the Secretary, as occasional complaints of the non-receipt of books and notices are usually traceable to either old or insufficient addresses.

SPECIAL NOTICE.

At a Special General Meeting held on February 13, 1900, the following Resolution was passed: "That the Council be and is hereby authorized to add to the title of the Musical Association on its publications and prospectuses the further notice the words 'In connection with the Internationales Musikgesellschaft.'" "

The English Committee of the latter Society (International Musical Society) consists of: Sir Hubert Parry (President), Mr. Otto Goldschmidt (Vice-President), Sir Frederick Bridge, Dr. Cummings, Mr. W. E. Hadow, Sir Alexander Macdonald, Dr. Mackay, Mr. Pader Mulford, Dr. McNaught, Professor Niska, Professor Press, Mr. Barclay Squire, Professor Stanford, Mr. Sedley Taylor. The Society publishes a monthly journal and quarterly Magazine, employing four languages, with the object of promoting interchange between different countries of information and opinions concerning the history, art, and science of music.

Owing to the long-standing position of the Musical Association, members thereof are admitted as members of the International Musical Society on very special terms, which can be ascertained from the Secretary of the Musical Association.

November 13, 1900

PROFESSOR SIR J. FREDERICK BRIDGE, M.A. D.C.,
IN THE CHAIR.

ON THE MUSICAL INTRODUCTIONS FOUND IN
CERTAIN METRICAL PSALTERS.

By Sir JOHN STANBRO.

THESE Introductions, Directions, or Principles, as they were variously styled, contain what we should now term the Rudiments of Music, or at all events, as much of them as is needed for those who wish to sing a simple melody. They bear an interest peculiarly their own, as illustrating the efforts made by the pioneers of congregational psalmody to secure an intelligent, as well as a general participation in its rendering.

Psalm-singing was to our ancestors of the early reformed Church, something to be approached with reverence; not to be dealt with lightly, but worthy of serious study. This idea of providing musical instructions was handed on, and retained, for certainly ages years; and though hourly it became a mere fashion to affix something of that sort to every Psalm-book printed, the contents are ever the less interesting, so by viewing them consecutively and confidentially, we get a clear insight into the various methods of practical music in vogue during this long period. We can trace efforts to record pitch, key, time; we discover the source and growth of several systems of *teffoglio*; and incidentally, we can read, though it has been quite unconsciously recorded, the story of the marvellous hold which the "ancient" has on the human mind even when it has become obsolete and useless. Men cannot, dare not throw it aside, it is consecrated by age, and all innovations are profane.

Let us begin by looking into our English Psalters. You are all aware that the friend Thomas Stenhold was Groom of the Robes to Henry VIII., and that he first began to verify the Psalms for his own satisfaction and private use, but his efforts came under the notice of the young Prince Edward, afterwards Edward VI., who encouraged him to persevere in his task for the public good. For a full history of this man and his co-workers you have only to refer to the admirable articles in Johnson's "Dictionary of Musicology." It will suffice if I remind you that our national metrical Psalms were issued at first in unaltered form. Stenhold published some-

teen of them dedicated to Edward VI; these were increased to thirty-seven after his death and published in 1549; forty-four were issued in 1551, consisting of the thirty-seven by Sternhold and seven by Hopkins; in 1556 the collection numbered fifty-one; in 1559 John Day paid a fine for having printed "seven copies without licence" of a "quartern of psalmes with notes." There is no surviving copy of this book. In 1560 an edition was issued with sixty-five metrical psalters with their notes. One copy of this book alone exists; it is in the library of Christ Church, Oxford.

We now come to a period of great interest musically. Two copies of the Sternhold Psalter exist, dated 1581; one belonging to Mr. Octavius Morgan, the other, a complete copy in MS., is in the library of Christ Church, Oxford. No others are known. Both these copies contain a "short introduction to the science of music," though the number of Psalters they contain is different, the printed book has only eighty-three Psalters, whereas the MS. contains the whole 136, though not in consecutive order.* At last was published for the first time, in 1582, the "Whole Booke of Psalters," &c., "with apt notes to sing them withall," the "apt notes" being gathered from the many sources thrown open by the close intercourse between Swiss, French, Dutch, German, and English Protestants. But here it is important to notice that however "apt" the notes were to the metrical words, it is certain that our congregations of worshippers were not altogether "apt" to the rendering of the music—a fact which has hitherto, as far as I know, not been sufficiently recognised. Hence, two remedies were tried—one, to give such instructions in the rudiments of music as would enable those who chose to take the trouble, to learn how to sing and sing at sight; the other, to boldly print in the staff the notes and name of each note of the music by the side of, or under the note itself.

The "Introduction to the skill of music" just mentioned as being in the two copies of the metrical psalters of 1581, is to be found in the only surviving complete psalter of 1582, and was issued in the 1584 edition. With very slight alterations it appeared in the editions of 1577, 1581 (1580).† As this "Introduction" shows definitely how music was taught in the middle of the sixteenth century, I think it is of sufficient importance to be printed out in full, as given in 1584.

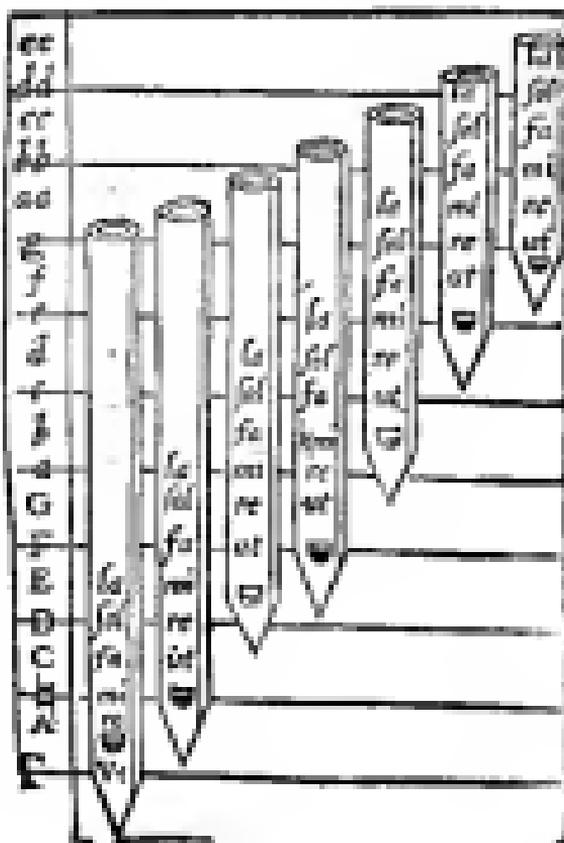
* About ninety five are given in the body of the book, the gaps being filled up by an "Addition," which also contains a few psalters in different metres by different hands. I am much indebted to Professor York Powell, Librarian of Christ Church, for allowing me to examine these two copies and psalters in question.

† Hawkins asserts that the "Short Introduction" did not reappear after 1577. It certainly is given in the first edition of 1581, though not in the 2d edition of the same date.

"A SHORT INTRODUCTION INTO THE SCIENCE OF MUSICK, MADE FOR SUCH AS ARE DESIROUS TO HAVE THE KNOWLEDGE THEREOF, FOR THE SINGING OF THESE PSALMES.

"For that the made & ignorant in song, may with more delight, desire, & good will, be moved and drawn to the godly exercise of singing of Psalmes, aswell in common places of prayer where all together with one voyce render thanks & praises to God, as privately by themselves or at home in their houses. I have set here in the beginning of this booke of psalmes, an easy & most plain way and rule, of the order of the Notes and voyces of singing, which commonly is called the Scale of Musick or the Glasses vt. Wherby (any diligence given therunto) every man may in a few dayes, yet in a few houres, acquirs with out all paye, and that also without ayde or helpe of any other teacher, attayne to a sufficient knowledge to singe any Psalmes contained in this booke, or any such other plain & easy songs as these are.

Behold this Table.



" AN INTRODUCTION TO LEARN TO SING.

"In this Table of *Guesse vt*, is contained all, what is necessary to the knowledge of singing. Whosoever it must be diligently waid, & must also be perfectly committed to memory, so that ye can easily & distinctly say it without booke, both forward and backward, that is, upwards and downward. And this is the greatest payne that ye neede to take in this tract.

"Ye must also note that the letters ascending on the left hand of the Table are called *Kayes* or *Classe*, of which, the first is a *Grave* letter, signifying, *g*, and is called *Guesse* (of whom ye whole Table or scale is called ye *Guesse vt*). All the other are *litta* letters *vt*, in number *a, b, c, d, e, f, g*, then repeating ye same again, beginning at *a*, and the thirde time repeatinge the same till ye come to *vt, la*. Whiche is the last. But all these *Kayes* are not signed or set in these *Posures*: but only *a*, or *vt*, most commonly *C*, or *F*, or *B*. *C*, both this forme or signe.



The *kayes* of this *Scale* or table are divided and set both by the diverse orders of letters. From *Guesse, vt*, to *G, sol, re, vt*, are signed with Capital letters & are called *graves*, base or capital *Kayes*, from *G, sol, re, vt*, to *g, sol, re, vt*, they are written with small letters: & are called *meane* or small *kayes*: and from *g, sol, re, vt*, to *vt, la*, they are written with double letters, & are called *double bases*, and *treble kayes*. When it chanceth a *key* to be of one letter, as *G, sol, re, vt*, & *g, sol, re, vt, a, la, mi, re, & a, la, mi, re, F, fa, ut*, and *f, fa, ut, E, la, mi*, and *e, la, mi*, ye may (to put difference and distinction betweene them) set the one capital, *G*, or *G, sol, re, vt*, the lower and thither small *g*, or *g, sol, re, vt*, the higher and so of others. They are called *kayes* because they open, as it were the doore, and make way into song, for by the sight & place of ye *key* ye shal know easily the whole song, the nature of every note in what *key* or place it standeth, & howe ye shal name it. Ye see also in the Table, that some of the *kayes* be set in lines or rules, and other are set in spaces because ye lines as *guesse vt*, is set in rule, *a, re*, in space: *b, mi*, in rule, *c, fa, vt*, in space, *d, sol, re*, in rule, & so ascending to the end: so also in the songs of your booke, ye see rules, & spaces, so that every rule & space is yours take ensuewth to some one rule or space of your table or scale: and taketh ye name of the same, which ye may easily find out, either by ascending

or descending from the key, set & marked in your song. Moreover it is to be noted, that there are six voices or notes signified and expressed by these six syllables: *ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la*: by which thence repetition of them, maye be song in songs of what compass so ever they be, which six notes you must learne to raise aptly of some one that can already singe, or by some instrument of Musike, as the violsins, or some other such like.

"Which thing well learned, ye shal neede no other teaching of any. And for a playser learninge thereof, I have set before your eyes, those vi. notes ascending, & descending & again with a little variatione from their natural order to thende ye may attayne to the rest tunes of them, so howe ever they be played. For these two exercises wel had and tuned a night, all other songs & Psalms, with little use and a small labour, will come be attained unto.



"First ye must diligently search out in what key every note of yere song standeth: Which ye may easily do, in beholding your signed key (commonly called the cleave) which is set in the beginning of every song, and that line, or space wherein that signed key is set, beareth the name of the same key: and all notes standing in the line or space are sayd to stand in that key and so ascending or descending from that key, ye shal straight way so whereto, or in what key every Note of your song standeth. As in this present example, if ye wil know whereto your first Note standeth, consider your key, signed & marked with this letter, *c*. in the second rule and because it standeth in rule, ye find by your Table, that it is *c, ut, fa, ut* (For thother two, *c, c*, which are *C, fa, ut*, and *re, ut, fa*, stande in space) wherfore that second line throughout is called *c, ut, fa, ut*, and all the Notes placed in that line, are counted to stand in *c, ut, fa, ut*. Thence descend from that keye to the next space, which (as your table telleth you) is *b, fa, re*. From thence to the next rule, which is *a, fa, ut, re*, and from thence to the next

space, wherein your first note standeth, which is G, sol, re, si: so finde ye by descendinge in order beginning at your signed keye, after this sort: c, sol, fa, ut, b, fa, ♯ , mi, a, la, mi, re: G, sol, re, si: that your first note standeth in G, sol, re, si, wherfore ye maye sing it by any of these .j. notes sol, re, or si: but because this note si in this place is most aptest to ascend withall, ye shal call it, si, by the same triel ye shall find that your second Note standeth in a, la, mi, re, ye shall expresse it in singing by this voyce re rather than by la or mi, because re, is in order next above si, so shal ye find the third note to stand in b, fa, ♯ mi, which ye shal expresse by sol. The fourth standeth in ye signed key or cleave wherfore it standeth in a, sol, fa, ut, which ye must expresse by fa. The fifth in a, la, sol, re, & is so to be expresseed by sol, ye note & highest note, ye shal by ascending from your key find to stand in, a, la, mi, & is to be expresseed in voice by la, so have you ye whole compass of your song: & as in order of notes & sound of voyces, ye ascended, so contrariwise, ye must descend til ye com to the last note of your space. Thus note that when b, fa, ♯ , mi, is formed & signed in this manner, with this letter b, which is called b, flat, it must be expresseed with this voice or note fa, but if it be formed & signed with this letter ♯ , which is called b, sharpe, or it have no sign at all, then must ye expresse it in singing with this voice or note mi. Likewise ye may practise, placing your first note, si in any other key, wherein ye finde si, which are via, Gans, ut, G, fa, ut, F, fa, ut, grace G sol re, ut grace, a, sol, fa, ut, f, fa, ut, sharp, g, sol, re, si, sharp, ascending vp to la, & descending as in your former example. These .viij. several ascensions & descensions, upon these grounds or cleaves: as commonly called of writers .viij. deductions: which ye may plainly and distinctly behold in your table or scale.

¹¹ One example more have I set, wherein ye sing fa, re b, fa, ♯ , mi, whose deduction beginneth in si: placed in F, fa, ut, grace or capital as you see:—



Ye have also in your scales divers formes & figures of notes. Of which all, it behooveth you to knowe both the names and values.

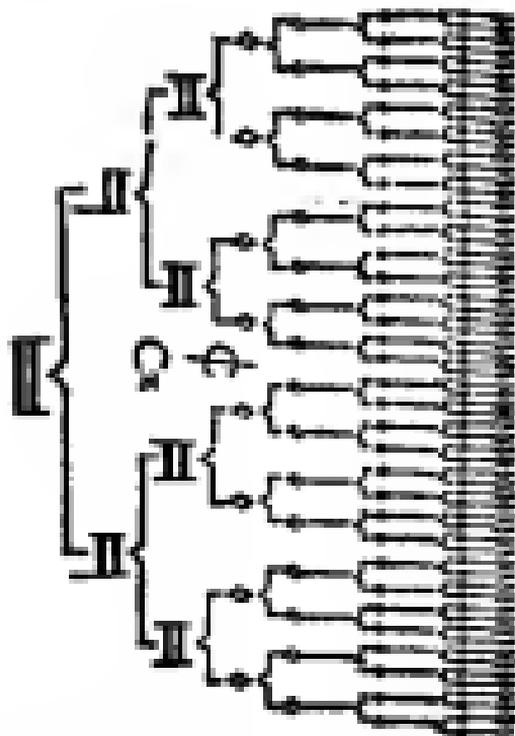
DIVERSE FORMS OF NOTES.



The first of these is a *Largo*; the second a *Long*. The third a *beak*: The fourth a *Sembrial*: the fifth a *Missa*. The sixth a *Creschet*. The seventh and last a *Quarre*.

"The first is worth in value two of the second, that is, two *Longes*; and one *Long* is worth two *Breves*; and one *Breve*, is two *Sembrials*; and one *Sembrial*, two *Misses*, and hath twice the time in pronouncing & in singing that the *Missa* hath, one *Missa* is worth two *Creschets*; and one *creschet* is two *quarres*, as appeareth in the Table following.

TO THE READER.



If there chanceth any *pricke* to meet by any of these notes, the *pricke* is worthe in value the note next following it. As a

8 On Musical Introductions in certain Metrical Poemes.

prick out by a Semibreve, as thus $\frac{\text{C}}{\text{—}}$ is worthe thys

note, $\frac{\text{C}}{\text{—}}$ whiche is a Minime, and a prick by a minime as here

$\frac{\text{C}}{\text{—}}$ is worthe a $\frac{\text{C}}{\text{—}}$ There are also cedatives in singing,

Pauses or rests, set in songs, sometimes for ease of the singer, and someth tyme of the scope, sometimes where divers parts ar, for sweetnes of the Harmony & apt repetitions & reports. which are signified by little strikes or lines, or half lines, betwixt notes as thus, The first, drawes from the lyne line to the thirde:



is called a long rest, and signifyeth that ye must pause whil that a long is song, which is worth the plain song Notes, or min. semibreves. The second whiche is from one line to another is called a Breve rest, & requirith ye pausing of a Breve or of ii. Semibreves. The thirde, whiche is from a line to the halfe space underneath: is called a Semibreve rest, & requirith the pause or space while a Semibreve is a singinge. The fourth whiche is ascending from the lyne, to the halfe space above, is called a Minime rest, and is but the drawing of a breath, while a Minime may be song. The fifth and last, which is like to ye Minime rest, but crookt at ye top, requirith ye pause of a trochee.

"To set out a full and absolute knowledge of the nature of the scale, the differences between notes and halfe notes, and halfe notes between themselves, of intervals, proportions, and which notes concord & agree together, and which disagree. What modes there ar, and how many. What is perfection, what imperfection, how notes ought to be bound together, & what their value is so bound, layed upward or downward: pertaineth to a true introduction to that of Musicks. These things before taught, serve at this time for the pore volunthead and rude, sufficient and enough to the attaining of such knowledge in singing as shall be requisite to the singing of Poemes, contained in this booke, for which cause only they are set out."

Several points of interest at once present themselves, if we bear in mind that this little treatise was written before 1581, thirty-six years before Theo. Morley's "Plaine and Easie Introduction." The expression signed *hys*, or signing a *hys*, is a fine-runner of our useful word *signature*. But our author still uses the words *claf*, *hys*, and *notr* rather inde-

crisply. For example, he calls all the letters of the hexachords *leys*; he speaks of the C and F *leys* as *leys*; he says a sign *ley* is commonly called the *cleave*; lastly, he describes two *leys* as *octave apart* as having the same letters, meaning of course two notes. The word *line* of a staff had not yet displaced the older *mens raba*, and they were reckoned from the top downwards, the first rule being our fifth line, and so on. The word *note* is just beginning to supersede the older *note*; our unknown author speaks of the "voyses or notes *fa*," but he also speaks elsewhere of the "order of notes and sound of voyces," showing that the word *note* was soon to be confined to the actual sign, releasing the word *voice* for its normal meanings of the sound of a voice or, a voice-part, or any part (as we now say, a *for voice*, etc.). We can trace the germ of our octave system in the fact that the reader is told to reckon the Grave, Meane, and Treble *leys*, by the letters which represent a note and its octave, from Grave G (or Greek Gamma) to G, from G to g, from g to aa (for gg had the compass been extended two notes higher). We find no allusion to *hars*, none are used in the Musica Transrupta (1588), but they show themselves in Morley (1597, pp. 32-3) and in his Part II, they are introduced into the specimens of Decaert without any remark. The word *pitch* which commonly means a note (*pitch-song* signifying written or printed music), begins here to be used for a *pitch*, or, as we now know it, a *dot*. We see here also the rudimentary form of our modern note. The surffress rest which in the example hangs "from one line to the half space underneath" is our days retains its position under the line, though its shape does not require that it should fill "half the space underneath."

The crotchet rest which is "croked at ye top" accounts for the fact that our modern crotchet rest is surmounted by a curve towards the right, and we may add, that when the quaver was introduced and a corresponding rest was required, it was obviously necessary to turn its crook to the left, because the pre-existing crotchet had already assumed a crook to the right. Our author, who must have been a very good musician, cannot refrain from insisting, in his cynical closing words, how much more could and ought to be learnt, and it must have been a severe blow to any would-be pedagogue who had mastered the whole of this Introduction to be told by the writer that he considered what had gone before as being, for the present at least, sufficient to enable the "poor unlearned and rude" to sing the Psalter-tunes contained in the book. But trifling and contemptible as our learned author considers the amount of labour required by his Introduction, we who read it nearly 350 years later

cannot be surprised that the "poor, unlearned, and rude" demanded some such simpler method of arriving at the art of singing the more melodies of Psalm-tunes.

Beaumont had already grappled with this difficulty as early as 1550, by placing soft syllables by the side of each note; thus rendering all study of the hexachordal system unnecessary. With this example before him it is hard to believe that fourteen years later Dept. in our complete 1562 psalter, did not adopt this system, instead of driving his readers through the "Introduction to the science" which you have just read. But, the serious task it imposed on the rude and unlearned was clearly more than they cared to undertake, and there must have been a general outcry against it.

Consequently, six years later, namely, in 1568, we find this learned Introduction turned out to make room for a short Preface of one page, merely pointing out how very little trouble is required now that the first letter of the soft name stands by the side of every note in the psalter. I now give the Preface.

" TO THE READER.

"Thou shalt understand (gentle Reader) that I have (for the helpe of those that are desirous to learne to sing) caused a new print of Note to be made with letters to be rayned to euerie Note. Wherby thou mayest know, how to call euerie note by his right name, so that with a very little diligence (as thou art taught in the introduction printed herebefore in the Psalter) thou mayest the more easilie by the writing of these letters, come to the knowledge of perfect Solfeyging: Wherby thou mayest sing the psalmes the more speedilie and easilie: The letters be these V for Vi, B for Be, M for My, F for Fa, S for Sol, L for La. Thus when you see any letter rayned by the note, you may easilie call him by his right name, as by these two examples you may the better perceiue.



Thus I cannot then veto him that breath for ease, who grant that we sing with our hearts unto the glorious high-holy name. Amen."

The simplicity of this system secured its success, for the editions having these letter-notes appeared (after 1570, 8vo.); in 1573 (7), 8vo.; 1575, 4to.; 1576, 4to.

In 1577 the learned Introduction appears again; but in 1581, a 4to edition contained the Preface, and letter-notes, while an 8vo edition reproduced the Introduction.

This was followed by letter-note editions in 1583, 4to.; 1594, 4to.; 1598, 4to.; 1603, 4to., the notes being lettered up to Psalm 89, and finally in 1608, 4to.*

After this time both "Prefaces and letter-notes," and "Introductions to the sciences" disappeared from "Sternhold and Hopkins." The book itself however, with or without its psalm verse melodies, lived on, overlapping its "allowed," not "authorised" successor, the New Version by Tate and Brady, until at last it died a hard death in 1868, having passed through about five editions.

I now wish to take you back to the musical instructions in two early French Psalters. The first is "Psaumes de David, avec nouvelle et facile méthode pour chanter chacun couplet des Psaumes, sans recourir au premier, selon le chant accousté en Flandre, exprimé par notes compendieuses exposées en la Preface de l'Authour d'icelles." Avec privilege. Par Pierre Davantere, MDLX.

A notice of this most interesting book was given by Herr Georg Becker, in the "Monatliche für Musikgeschichte," 1869, p. 151, also, the whole of the Preface and one Psalm are to be found p. 489, Vol. II., of the valuable work of Mosen, O. Dagen, "Clement Marot et le Psaume Huguenot." But as neither of these may be easily accessible to you, I venture to give you an account of this psalter of Davantere, and of the system which gained for him the title "Inventeur de la musique chiffrée." †

* Mr. Waddidge, in his interesting study on Psalters in Queen's Dictionary, states that the edition of 1607 has musical instructions, and that some talligatures are added under some of the notes. The Bodleian copy of the edition: a copy in my own library, and two others at different parts in the British Museum have been collated, but in neither case is there any preliminary musical matter or letter notes. It does not follow that Mr. Waddidge has made a mistake; for there is often great irregularity in the making up of books of this period, and I have no doubt he has seen a copy having the contents he describes.

† I wish to express my gratitude to Mr. Alfred Lamborn for placing his copy of this rare book at my service (despatch). Though in regardingly manner, there appear to have been two different title-pages, one having the name of Michel de Baye with the device of an open book within a border of branches, the other (as in Mr. Lamborn's copy) having the name of Davantere and the device of the Vergata Devina with mottoes in Hebrew and Greek. "Lift up on in the light of Thy countenance, O Lord," and "Knowledge maketh rich."

The author commences by pointing out the difficulty which arises, if only the first verse of a psalter has musical notes, of carrying back the eye from the other verses to the tune, and of course it may happen that after turning over, the tune may not be on the same page as the words. He then excuses himself from printing musical notes over every word of the Psalter on the ground that the book would be "benoçoup plus gros, et par ce plus chier, et moins portatil." He says he had long hoped that some musician would invent a simple method of representing tones to untrained singers, but as no musician has come forward with such a method, he has himself undertaken the task. Taking the ordinary staff of five lines, he places the number 1 below the line, 2 against the first line, and so on up to 9 in the fourth space, he then, in order to avoid double numbers, uses a capital A for the top line, and a B for the space above, instead of 10 and 11, thus:—



These eleven signs are to represent the eleven regular degrees, or diatonic steps, of the voice of a man.

Dots to the left thus, .1, .2, .3, signify that the notes are to be sung "by B *mol*" (by that he means of course, in the *molle* or soft hexachord). Dots to the right signify that the notes are to be sung in the "*chant de li guesni*" (the *durum* or hard hexachord). The absence of any dot shows that the music is "*li chant neutre*." He explains this "*chant neutre*" in words which themselves require explanation, for he adds that "*muscicains* say that it is not so hard as that of the *li guesni*, which they also call *dur*; nor so sweet or soft as that of the *B mol*, called also *B mol*."

I can only suggest that these musicians felt that a succession of sounds not coming under a definite hexachord (such as the first or some other of the Church modes) stood, in a sense, midway between "hard and soft" in effect, and so might rightly be called "*neuter*." But in practice, his "*chant neutre*" is always the hexachord, or portion of one, commencing with *af* on the middle C, or, the space below the line. Davancier's *Tone-system* consists of adding spright strokes, just like those in use in our *Tone Sol-fa* as marks of a higher octave. When no such marks are against notes, they are *tenores*; a short spright at right hand top indicates *scandentes*; double in length, a *terce*. He uses the signs (1)

for a rest, and also for the prolongation of a sound. The assumption that the human voice had a compass of an eleventh is curious and interesting, it appears to have been generally accepted. Let us take five lines and see how Davance's system looks:—



If we place a Soprano clef on these lines, the compass will extend from *b* to *c*, thus—



If we place an Alto clef, it will extend from *E* to *a*, thus—



If we place a Tenor clef, it will extend from *c* to *f*, thus—



It will be seen at once that the numeral remains fixed but that it has to do duty for three distinct sounds.

Had Davance moved his number 1 with the hexachord, or with the clefs, he would have formulated the numerical system of Rousseau, so much used to this day in France, and advocated by many in this country.

The difficulty and absurdity of Davantes' system may also be shown at a glance by the following diagrams—



(These are the only clefs he uses.)

The general result is that Davantes' numerical system, far from simplifying musical notation, creates an alternative which is tolerably difficult even for an expert musician to master, and would certainly be most confusing and puzzling to any untrained person.

The reasons for its failure are easily recognisable: it is a mixture of Gaussian hexachords and mutations with a numerical measurement made from three separate starting-points, owing to the use of *faed genera* with a movable clef. I will now give some specimens of tunes as they appear in his *Psalter*, so that readers shall be able to form their own opinion as to its worth.

I have selected three examples so as to exhibit the use of the three Clefs, or rather the use of the C clef on three different lines, as shown above. These examples are worth a little study, as I know no better exposition of the practical connection between Hexachords and Solbung. At the same time they show the utter absurdity of Davantes' system for practical purposes, and they prove that although he may have been the first to associate numbers with notes, he was not musician enough to see the rich possibilities actually within reach.

Davantes only prints the name over the first staves of each *Psalm*; his numerical system alone is placed over the remaining staves.

Remarks on Poem XXVIII.

Notice that the first softing is reckoned from the hexachord commencing on middle *c* (*g'*), then the first note is *sol*, but please observe that its numeral is 6 although it is the 5th of the hexachord from *c'*. It must be called No. 6, because No. 1 is invariably the space below the lines.

Looking at the numerals 6, 7, 8, below the first three notes, it will be seen that there is a stroke above them to the right; this shows that the length of the note is a scribbow, and that they belong to the 3rd hexachord. There are no dots on either side of the next four notes; that shows they also belong to *claus vester*, or the hexachord from middle *c*. The first note of the second line of music is *fa*, the 4th of the *c sol fa* or hexachord (the 4th of his *claus vester*), but, the next note to it (*g*) is now called *re* instead of *sol*, that is to say, a mutation has taken place; the tone is about to exceed the limit of the hexachord in which it commenced, therefore, a higher hexachord, one containing the 8th of the signature, must be used: we see thus moved into the 6th of the Gallician hexachords, *f fa ut*. Notice that the sign placed on the left side of the 6 and 8 signifies that the notes are scribbowes (1) and are in the soft hexachord. The following notes to the end of this line of music all have this mark, on left, by 8 *mol*.

Between the 2nd and 3rd lines of the music another mutation takes place. The tone is descending below the 6 notes of the hexachord, and the writer must go back to his original *c sol fa* at system. The result is worth noticing: the last note of the second line of music is *fa*, but the next note below it (first of line 3) has to be called *la*. Thus:—



Observe the sign for his scribbowes rest. (1)

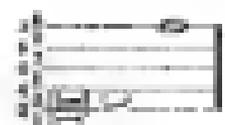
You will now find it easy to follow throughout the tune the 6 steps of softing, which oscillates between the two groups—



Observe that the tone ends on *B \flat* , this result (rather according to the modern eye) is inevitable. The whole melody is *Hypo-Dorian* transposed; the last note is its legitimate *Final*. On the left hand side of the heading of the Poem, you will have noticed this sign, $\alpha \rightarrow \gamma$. This is intended to point out that the hexachord commencing on the numeral α is interchanged with that beginning on numeral γ with a flat 4th (soft hexachord). Thus,—



On the right hand side of the heading of the Poem you will have seen $\gamma \rightarrow \alpha$. This is to show the compass of the bass, which extends from the position of the numeral γ to that of the note represented by α , the dot on the left showing that the \flat is flat. Thus,—



REMARKS ON PSALM CXXIII.

On the left hand side of the heading we learn by the sign γ —6 that the two hexachords used are the one beginning on the note where his numeral γ falls, and the dot shows that it is *diaton.*, or contains a *b* natural; and, the other beginning on a middle γ where his numeral 6 falls. Thus:—



The sign on the right of the heading shows the compass, which extends from his numeral γ to the space above the top line, represented by his B. The solfeyg commenced in the *a* hexachord, but on the fifth note it passes into that beginning on *g*, this mutation often occurs. It is worth noticing that the last four notes of the tune, instead of being *fa, ut, re, ut* of the *a* hexachord, are solfed as *fa, la, ut, fa*. We here get a very early intimation (probably one of the earliest), that *ut, re, ut* will at a later period be entirely superseded by *fa, ut, la*. Thus:—



the *ut* being only used in future for the leading-note of a scale, and *ut* and *re* entirely discarded.

Plume L.L.L.L.

<p>A l'heure où l'âme se sent égarée par l'absence de son Dieu et se cherche dans les ténements de la vie et se perd dans les ténements de la vie et se perd dans les ténements de la vie</p> <p>I l'âme se sent égarée par l'absence de son Dieu et se cherche dans les ténements de la vie et se perd dans les ténements de la vie</p>	
--	--

REMARKS ON PSALM XXXIX.

The signs of *collegio* and *compas* do not appear in the above facsimile; they are at the bottom of the previous page of the work. They are as follows: 1.—*c*, that is to say, the hexachord commencing on the space below the line *c*, and that beginning on the position of the numeral *g*, that is *g*. The *compas* is 2.—*g*, that is from *d* to *d'*. The melody is in Mode X, and there is proof that no extraneous change of music notes was allowed to mar its pure regularity; for if you look at the last note of the second line and the first two notes of line three, you will find an *f* with a *g* on either side, and it is called *fa*, which could not be the case if it were to be sung *fa sharp*.

We are now in a position to see how far Davantes is entitled to the honorable title of *inventeur de la musique chiffre*. Of course this depends on what we mean by the term. I presume we may safely say that he was among the earliest, if not the first, to discover that numerals could be substituted for notes on a staff; but he did not see that this could not possibly be of any practical value so long as his numbers remained fixed, while his st started from three different points. In fact a true numerical notation could not exist until a veritable movable *ut* or *do* had become recognized. This did not take place until a century after Davantes, as we shall see later on; so I think that Rousseau must still be credited with the practical application of numbers as signs of sounds one century later still, namely, towards the close of the 18th century.

Almost simultaneously with Davantes' book, perhaps in the same year, there appeared a Psalter edited by Pierre Vallée, in which, over every note of music was printed its syllable applicable. The author must have the credit of having first called John Day, who did not print his edition with the syllable names by the side of each note till ten years later. But neither Day nor Vallée provided a convenient method by which the music could be attached to every word of the Psalter, short of printing music and words in columns. The preface of Vallée contains much of interest. It is headed "Pierre Vallée à tous frères d'innocent chapitre les louanges de Seigneur. Salut." Vallée like his predecessors lamented the length of time required by ordinary persons for mastering the art of singing by note, but he says that whereas formerly it was necessary to pass two or three months in study under a "chastré," "maintenant, ne vous y faudra demeurer que quinze jours, en trois semaines, pour apprendre d'innocent les dites notes." Vallée, you see, was more modest than the author of John Day's preface, who promised that with "diligence given therunto" a man might master the subject "in

a few days, yes, in a few hours." Vallote in the course of his instructions states what at first sight might seem rather remarkable; when you find notes of this sort—



"In style faut avant tenir que la quatrie en chantant car chacune ne vaut qu'une mesure, ou un tact, c'est à dire, un balancement de la main." This statement, that a Semibreve in the then more modern notation was equal to a Breve in the older notation, is of some importance. It was stated, as you may remember, in the English Introduction of 1584, and it is fully borne out in the instructions given in the German Psalter which I shall next bring under your notice.

Please observe also our author's remark that a Semibreve is equal to two beats. This throws some light on the probable sense of music at this period.

Vallote next gives representations of the manner in which some notes than one to one syllable are printed. The signs are of course borrowed directly from the ligatures of printing—



The reader will notice that no hyphens are here used for connecting the detached syllables of a word; they were in fact gradually being brought into use at this epoch, but without definite rules.* Vallote places his Sharp over a note, not beside it—



He says that this sign shows that the note is to be taken a semitone above "by raising the voice a little higher than usual" ("en relevant la voix un point plus haut que de coutume")—rather a primitive form of direction! The Introduction concludes with a set of exercises on the so-called compass of six notes, and are reckoned from the note *si* in three positions, C, F, G.

* A reference to the Pan books of contemporary Madrigals shows that words were generally printed without separating the component syllables, provided the music had a note for each syllable. Hyphens are only used when several notes go to one syllable, and when a word is divided between the end of one line and the beginning of the next.

When the seventh (or leading note) is touched in the exercises, Vallet does not adopt the hexachordal system and call it *re*, but contrary to all systems, names it *fa*, thus:—



ut re ut fa ut sol ut la re fa la sol ut ut

The musical instructions, which are found in "*Die Psalmen Davids in altnieder Teutscher Gesangsreime bracht*. Durch Casparum Pflügelium Pastorem zu Kaiserwerd, und Casparlichen B. Swibert darselbe. Coeln 1580. {Two}" are of great interest and importance, as showing that at the close of the sixteenth century there existed a large class of persons who, though capable of singing ancient plainsong at sight, could not sing from the ordinary notation. So the author actually provides rules for turning psalm-tunes into plainsong notation! I give the Preface in full.

"There are many people, particularly among those, educated in Catholic institutions and clerical schools, who though they understand the plainsong (Chormang), do not know how to deal with the signatures and notes of ancient *Synodus*. Wherefore I thought at first of giving the melodies in both sorts of notes for all the Psalms. But when I remembered, how unwieldy that would be, and that it would take a great deal of room in the book, I thought of another way, that could be used even by those who only know the plainsong (Chormang): And it is this, that for each melody two kinds of cleaves signatures are given, but one signature is divided from the other by a long line drawn across. Now when anyone wishes to have and sing the melodies in plainsong notes (Chormeter), he must only look at the first cleave, which is written in the plainsong style (Chormangweise), and disregard the other, and sing all the notes equally, like plainsong notes (Chormeter). But if anyone finds difficulty in doing this, he must write out the melodies, which he wishes to comprehend, taking only the first signature, which is written in the plainsong style (Chormangweise), leaving the other alone, and place after it the plainsong notes (Chormeter) that he knows, instead of the Figural notes; writing for the four-cornered ones \diamond , also for the tailed ones

\diamond \blacklozenge this P , for those tied ones P this P , for those P this P , for the final ones P this P , and he will

then have the melodies in plain-song notes (Chironotes). For example. The melody of the 30th Psalm is:—



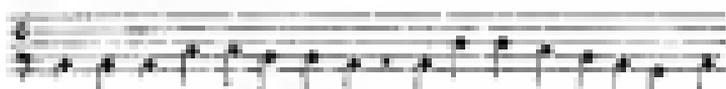
" Anyone wishing to turn this into plain-song, will remove the  with the sign , and change the notes in the way just mentioned, and this would be the result.—



Again, the Penitential Psalm begin:—



If the Figural signature with the sign is now removed, and the notes, in the order in which they stand, are changed, the result is:—



" As to the pause or sign of silence, which is written , the chorister (Choragus) should know that when it occurs, he must remain just so long a time silent, as it would have taken to sing a note like this , in measurement one beat, about as long as it takes to draw breath properly. The melodies are so arranged, that each syllable has its own particular note, for I have not thought it advisable in this work, to make long series of notes over one word. But it sometimes happens, though not often, that in the middle of a Psalm a verse is necessarily lengthened by one syllable, so that at a convenient place, two syllables must be squeezed under one note: when this happens, the sign  is placed, signifying, that both syllables, under which the sign stands, belong to one note; and the same note must be broken there. Every melody can therefore be brought into plain-song, and with great ease too; those that go from the *g* & *b* will map

seem rather more difficult to the inexperienced chorister (*Chorsänger*); but are not really so, if one only knows how to keep the particular character and style of a minor key (*betrollsgerings*). But several such melodies, if they occur more than once, I have transposed, to suit the chorister (*Chorsänger*), from the *g* *h* *moll* to *d* *h* *dur*, as it is to be found in the melody of the other Psalm; so as to be easier for the plainsong (*Chorsang*).

"Do not doubt, that whoever has a slight knowledge of plainsong, will, by the help of these instructions, be able to grasp and use the melodies. May this then happen to the honour of Almighty God, which this work seeks, Amen."

The importance of the direction that scribbles and minims are alike to be rendered by the same sign in plainsong I have before alluded to. The remainder of this paragraph will be very useful to students. Notice also the attempt to fix a metronomic standard by a "beat" being "about as long as it takes to draw breath properly." Our author has described a method of turning the then modern notation into the older; most of us will be glad to reverse the process, and learn how to read the older by the light of the newer.

A somewhat later German Psalm, published in *1806*, contains a Preface which has an important bearing on the position of the Choral, Church-song, or melody, in harmonized Psalm-tunes. I will read a translation of the title and Preface.

"The whole Psalm by Ambrose Lobwasser, Duxon."

"Here given from the French composition, with the same melody and number of syllables duntily and charmingly brought into German metre. Similarly, some Psalms and spiritual songs of Martin Luther and other learned divines. Now newly set in four parts, so that the melody (choral) is always in the Duxon, this never having been so printed before.

"By Samuel Marschal, musician and organist to the town and University of Basle.

"Printed at Basle. Ludwig Koenig. 1806."

PARSON.

"I have learnt through experience that placing the ordinary voice-part or usual melody in the Tenor, is not suitable for the sort of singing as practised in our churches, with the whole congregation to sing. For it brings these, unlearned in music (the larger part of the congregation), also into a state of uncertainty so that they often know not what is

being sung, because the melody (Choral) is awarded among the other voice-parts which are some being sung above, some below. So a few years ago I took many of the best known Psalms and spiritual songs of Martin Luther and other learned divines, and placed the melody (Choral) above in the treble (Discant), and then arranged the composition in such a way, that not only can everyone at once hear what is being sung, but anyone, man or woman, old or young, unhelped by the other parts, high or low, as fitting to each one's voice, can join in the singing of the melody (Choral).

"And this work of mine having being well received, I have undertaken something farther of the same sort. I have taken the whole Psalter, as done by Ambrose Lobwasser, from the Hebrew text, with the French composition in melody and number of syllables, transferred straight into the German text—which has been in print for thirty years past—and put the usual melody (Choral) in the treble (Discant), in "simplest contrapoints," as is expected in such songs when the whole of the congregation sings. Other compositions, some French, some German, are also given here, but in a different manner." [etc.]

I have been unable to trace any musical instructions in Dutch Psalters. One reason for this is because so many of their early Psalters had the scale letters placed against the side of the notes; and when this is the case, formal instructions is of course unnecessary. In our early English Psalters it is an invariable custom to omit instructions when the letter-note system is used. I mentioned just now that this system was introduced into an English Psalter in 1550. Ten years later, namely, in 1560, we find it adopted in "Het Boek der Psalmen Dutch—door Philips van Maris, Antwerp" (Sw). In the next year an edition of the celebrated Psalter of Dathenus was published at Dordrecht with letters against the notes. Smaller editions were issued from time to time till the middle of the following century. The great success of Dathenus, whose version was first printed in London in 1596, was due to his having adopted the same notes as Muret and Blag, thus enabling his countrymen to enjoy the beautiful melodies of the Huguenot Psalter. The compilation, by order of the States-General in 1773, of an authorized version which superseded all others, threw into disuse Dathenus' popular book, amongst many others more or less in use.

The Psalter of Este, 1552 and 1554, are without any musical instructions; so also is Ramsebeck, 1601, although there is a short preface on the notation of music, addressed to "Harmontal Dathenus," in which the author confesses that he has not attempted to study the Hebrew manuscripts, but says they are somewhat similar to those used in

the "Rustian Church who had their skill in music from the Grecians." Evidently Ravenscroft's notions of musical history were slightly confused. He goes on to say that a staff of 4 lines is used in the Church for "Phonation," and a staff of 5 lines for "Synphonias" or parts compounded of 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 voices,² and a staff of 6 lines "for instrumentall musick as Organs, Harps, Lutes, &c."

The first issue of Playford's "Whole Booke of Psalmes," 4to, 1671, contains no directions, nor are any in his five Psalteries, 1677 to 1699 and onward, but in later editions (e.g. the sixth in 1713), a few pages of instructions are printed from engraved plates.

In these, Playford has not had the courage to ignore altogether the hexachordal system and names, but he drops the C1, and adopts the "Fa, sol, la, fa, sol, la, mi, fa," for his solfeggio.

The complete Tune and Ready "New Version" of 1691 is without any music. But though there is music, there are no "Directions" in the Supplements of 1700, 1702, 1703, and 1704; but those of 1708, 1712, and 1718 have "Plain Instructions for all those who are desirous to learn or improve themselves in Psalmody, &c." In both sets of instructions the hexachordal system is given, but as the tones are all printed in two parts only, in the Treble and Bass Clefs, the treble and bass notes only are grouped in the diagram, and the old grace, soft hard, and soft hexachords have disappeared, with their round and square δ , a first step towards seeing the Guidonian system. In softening *mi*, *re*, *mi*, is superseded by *fa*, *sol*, *la*.

Although not a Metrical Psalter, a little book published in 1686 deserves careful notice. It had for its object the simplification of the art of solfeggio, and by this means the encouragement of psalm-singing, and the author's introduction is followed by a selection of psalm-tunes. As far as I know, this work contains the earliest attempt to use modified solfa names in order to provide a stage with the means of escaping the mistake of hexachords. This attempt, however, though not successful, encloses the germ of those modified solfa names the utility of which was discovered 150 years later by advocates of the *musella* *de*, and also, by imitation, those pledged to the *faad* *de* system. The following is the title: "A New and Easy Method to Learn to Sing by Book: Whereby one (who hath a good voice and ear) may, without other help, learn to sing true by Notes, Demurr'd chiefly

² This use of the word "phonation" for an unaccompanied single-voice part is fortunately so rare as to be unobscured. I presume he derived it, not from generally but from generally, an overblowing of the voice in declamation. The use of "synphonias" for part-singing is even less probable. We may well congratulate ourselves that both terms are obsolete.

for, and applied to, the promoting of PSALMODY; and furnished with variety of PSALM TUNES in Parts, with DIRECTIONS for that kind of Singing. Licensed Jan. 29. 1685/6 Rob. Midgeley, LONDON: Printed for William Rogers of the Sun, against St. Dunstons's Church in Fleet Street: 1685.*

The author's trenchant criticism of the system current in his time is as logical as out-spoken. He says in his Preface—

"That no few persons (not of cathedrals) understand Frick-Song a main reason is, the Obscurity and Confusion in the Method commonly taught, wherein the following Particulars make it a long drudgery to attain proficiency.

" 1. At first sight, we have presented a long Bead-roll of hard and useless names, to be con's'd backward and forward in the Gamut.

" 2. When this drudgery is over, follows a series, to learn differing names of the notes, according to the several places of *M*, which in each Cliff hath three several stations, being one while in *B*, another while in *E*, another while in *A*, the other names (*F*, *G*, *L*,) attending its motions.

" 3. When you are put these two, and can name your Notes three manner of ways, you are yet to seek for the chief thing, the Tuning of them, if you have not a Master at hand to lead you with his Voice or Instrument.

" 4. A fourth difficulty arises from the many Cliffs, which no less than seven ways change the places of the Notes upon the Lines and Spaces, and makes it a most tedious thing to be perfect in all, or but some of them.

" The removal of these difficulties, and thereby the Encouragement of Learning is that which I have endeavoured in this Essay. What I have done in order thereto, I shall here give the Reader some account of."

" First, as to the Gamut, omitting the old Names of the Notes as unnecessary, I retain only the letters of the Alphabet, by which the Notes are thence express'd. These letters being seven, A, B, C, D, E, F, G, I assign them as Names for the seven Musical Notes, taking only the liberty (for better sound sake, and indication of the Half-Notes places) instead of calling these three letters A, B, F, as in the Alphabet, to name them *L*, *M*, *N*.

" When a Flat or Sharp alters the nature of a Note, its Name also admits the like alteration, yet so as to keep the Letter belonging to the Line or Space, thereby making the change to be of no trouble to the Memory, but an help to sing the Notes in Tune. So *B* being sometimes sharp, and

* Dr. McNaught also refers from this book in his admirable paper as "The history and use of the note syllables," read before the Musical Association, January, 1892.

sometimes flat, I call it \sharp when it is sharp, and \flat when it is flat, as in (Bogus, Belson) with a softer sound, and therefore the more agreeable to a flat or soft Note, as the other is to a sharp.

"The like is done by \sharp , \flat being a Vowel both before it, when sharp as L, and when flat as M.

"By this means we have seven distinct Names for the seven Notes, keeping always the same places in each Cliff, and these Names such as both comply with the Gamut so much as is needful, and also with the Alterations that are made by Flats and Sharps, without trouble to the Memory."

Having thus formulated seven names for the seven degrees of the scale, our author wonders why practitioners only use "4 or 5", and he quotes Dr. Wallis, who, speaking of the absence of any name for the seventh degree of the scale says, "quod mirum est Guidoem non vidisse et practicum." We all think so too! Our writer then recommends students to learn "to tune the voice" (that is, to learn pitch and intonation) by listening to Bells, each being an easy method "as this Hanging Island," and six of them being enough to show the position of the scintillations. But this step forced him to number his notes like bells, that is downwards, thus—



and this makes some of his explanations rather puzzling at first glance. Moreover, it brings him dangerously near the very hexachordal system from which he is struggling to release himself. After this, he claims to have done further simplified labour by reducing his staff to two, Treble and Bass. Here he deserves great credit, for I believe the three-part tenor he gives are among the earliest examples of a *Staffa* being written in the treble clef.

The following exhibits his whole scheme of nomenclature:—



These may be pronounced as follows—

Sch, Son, Don, Mec, Lec, Faw, Fah, Occ, Lay, Beh, Son, Sch.

He avoids any scale involving an A flat, in the thirty-one pages of psalm-tunes with which the work concludes, so *La* is not modified. You can gather from what I have said that our author was presciently near making a valuable discovery and revolutionizing musical methods, but his fixed letter-system and his arduous appeal to "six bells" caused his book to be, like so many other efforts of pioneers, placed on book-shelves as a curiosity.

Before bringing to a close my notice of this "new and easy method" of teaching psalm-singing "from book," I must make one more quotation which will cause surprise to many. The author gives the following Tune (Southwell)—



He then adds: "The notes of the foregoing tune are usually broken or divided, and they are better sung as they are here printed"—

I will my heart in Thee,
My God and guide most just,
New and for me to this so done,
For in Thee do I trust.

I shall have to say more about "graces" later on, when speaking of Godwin's French Psalter which advocated their use in psalm-singing more than thirty years earlier. But although the tune just given was not the *Avranga* of down-grade, it is proof of the English tendency in the various directions. I should like to say in passing, that I attribute the rapid spread of vocal ornamentation at this epoch to the increasing use and popularity of the Violin. I think it more probable

that singers imitated the "figuration" they constantly heard perpetrated by fiddlers, than the graces were specially suited to, and used on the harpsichord. Flapans on the new "Treble Viola" must also naturally have been delighted at the power they now possessed of "skurring" from note to note; of course, the frets on the finger-board of a Treble Viol made a performance absolutely impossible. It is easy to see that singers would be only too pleased to imitate violists in this respect. Hence the constant directions for the *part de voix* in books of this period.

Signs of dissatisfaction with existing systems of instruction continued to show themselves. Thirty-nine years later another book appeared, "An Help to the Singing of PSALM-TUNES by the BOOK. In a method more easy than is generally taught. With DIRECTIONS for making an instrument with one String, by which any TUNE may be easily learned. As also A large Collection of TUNES in Two PARTS. With Psalms, Hymns, and Spiritual Songs, in various Measures. By W. S. &c." London: Printed, for Richard Ford, at the Angel in the Partry, near Stacks-Market, MDCCCLV." This book contains 32 pp. of "Help." 32 Tunes in two parts, followed by 616 pp. of Psalms and Hymns, Index, &c. The author at once acknowledges his obligation to the 1688 book just described, although he does not blindly follow the method there proposed. Like his predecessor, he renounces the *Clef* with its shifting positions. His idea is, to keep the word *M* to represent only the fixed note of the normal scale; and to call the movable semitones *Fa-sol*. Here is his scale in D:—



The first note is called *Sol* because it is the second note of the normal Scale C which begins on *fa*; this makes the next *fa*; then comes *fa* for *fa-sharp*, followed by *sol*, *fa*, *sol*, from the normal scale; and lastly, a new *fa* for *fa-sharp*, as ends on *sol*, because it is called *sol* in the scale of C.

Surely this is "confusion worst confounded!" No wonder that this book now lies with its predecessor among other rare curiosities! As if that were not enough, our author tumbles into the old snare of teaching by six bells! But as so often happens, some of his casual remarks are important. For example, he says:—"The voice should be drawn out at a Semibreve, about as long as you may tell four in an ordinary reading Time; saying 1, 2, 3, 4." (The word "tell" is of

course used in its old sense, "const.") This metronomic direction would, I think, lead to a much faster tempo far vaster than has been generally attributed to this period.²

I have more than once had reason to suspect that the notes *fa* and *la* were not always called *fa* and *la* as in Italian, but were anglicised at this time into *foy* and *lay*. I do not say that this was universal, it may have only been a dialect form. But if our writer's rhymes are to be trusted, he at least intended them to be so pronounced:—

"When F or C are sharp, you may
Then call them Foo, otherwise Fa."

and elsewhere he says:—

"Also when A is sharp, you may
Then call it Lo, otherwise La."

In another place he says that *la* is pronounced as in the word *labour*; he adds, *fa* is pronounced as in the word *father*. But those who think he is here contradicting himself must remember that *fa* is a common dialect form of *father* to this day.

We can now leave these two interesting quasi-psalms.

I must leave my subject for a time, and make a short digression. In manuscript ritual music the words and music of hymns are sometimes written out at full length, and this was indicated in what was (as far as I know) the earliest printed Hymnal with continuous music, thus: "Hymnorum cum nota speculans lingua ecclesie SARUM subscripta in qua quidem et illud unguinis est observatum et quilibet syllaba vocis participes notae: id est cum continua manu curatur, ut singula singula inter correspondant utique debitis inter computatur litter. Impensum Londini per Johanne Kyngston et Henricum Sutton Typographos 1559." The value of this work is much reduced by the shockingly bad registration of the black notes on red lines: it is a most discreditable specimen of music-printing!

²The most curious attempt to give a metronomic value to notes which I have ever met is quoted in an article by J. S. Kings, in the *Journal of the Musicological Society*, May, 1895, in an old book (about 1700) giving a description of "musical truth in the language" and showing how they can be taught even by means of a small dagger. It is as follows:—"Two inches make a semibreve and a semibreve is the length of the natural song of the wild chaffinch. I except the three shillards which is longer than our use in these parts. And six semibreves is a measure of an hour." An old author always uses a measure for such terms this would make it—111.

+ About thirteen copies are known to exist, one being in the library of Magdalen College, Oxford.

In 1572 was published at Heidelberg, a Psalter which contained a note of music for every syllable of text throughout. It was entitled "Die Psalmen Davids in Teutscher Gemengung nach Franckischer melodien und sylben art mit sonderlichen Geis gebrucht von Melisso." But this expensive method of publication does not appear to have become fashionable in Germany.

Later on, towards the middle or end of the 17th century and onward, when there was a large demand for French Psalters, the printers set them out in full, giving a note of music over every syllable, just in the same manner as Halmeus printed the prose version of the Psalter in the well-known Psalter Noted. This "setting out in full," which Dowdall sketched in 1786, but which afterwards became so common amongst continental Protestants, seems not to have been accepted in this country till 1688, in which year there appeared "The whole book of Psalms, as they are now sung in the Churches, with the singing notes of Time and Tune set to every syllable, made plain and easie to the understanding of all that can read: by the directions in the latter part of the preface." "Never before done in England." Then it gives Col. 3. 16.

"*Wissenschafft und mathematische Kunst, dasjenige
und Springen mit silblich zusammenhangt.*"

"Licensed, July 16, 1688, London.

Printed by R. Everingham for the Company of Stationers, and are to be sold by E. Brewster in St. Paul's Church-yard and S. Kneble near the Temple-gate. 1688."

I quote at once from the Preface a curious attempt to lay down a metronomic standard:—

"The first Time \square (and which is best used) is called a Brief, or two Times, or, a double Time, being about the duration of eight pulses at the wrist of a person in good health and temper . . ."

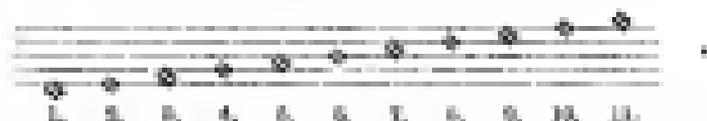
This statement is of considerable interest. Assuming that 70 to 80 is the average number of pulsations in a healthy human being, this will give a metronomic standard of \square , 70 to 80. If you sing or play a psalm tune at any pace between these limits, you will find that it is much more rapid than that generally attributed to our ancestors' style of singing. But of course such a standard is very variable; every healthy person has a very slow pulse, not much above 60. Yet I am inclined to think the author wished to make a \square (or \square) 72 to 75.

Then having treated of Time on this basis and having thrown in a few remarks about the faults of the clocks of his period, he goes on to say —

“The next thing to be spoken of is, the lowness, or height of the voice; of which there are eleven degrees, plainly demonstrated by five Lines, upon and between which, the Notes (aforementioned) of the Tasso are set. Whence observe, That the degrees of the Voice are affixt unto the difference in the Sounds of Bells, save that in singing is practis’d a twofold contrary order to that of the Bells: For in ringing, the smallest and most shrill Bell (which begins first) the Ringers call the Treble or lowest; and so the Bells go (in their terms) upwards to the biggest, and most full expression of the Sound: But the first note in singing begins at the biggest and most full delivery of the Voice next to grounding, and so goes upwards to the smallest and most shrill utterance of it next to speaking; so that what soundings the Ringers call downward, the Singers call upward.”

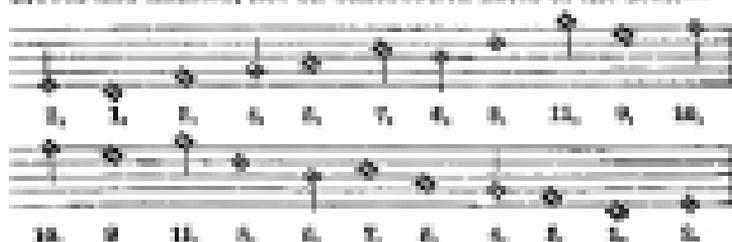
It is difficult to see what the author gains by calling attention to the difference, or rather contraryity, between the naming of a scale for the voice and that for bells, unless we are justified in assuming that people at this time were more familiar with bell-ringing than psalm-singing? He then proceeds to give exercises on the numerical system:—

“Begin to tune your voice at the lowest degree, which is at the first Note, and is under the lowest line, and sing the numbers upward, one, two, three, and so forth, up to eleven; and then sing them backwards down again, eleven, ten, nine, and so back down to one.” (For convenience as to to be called *learn*.) He then gives the Scale thus—



Please notice that he goes on boldly to eleven, not stopping at *g* nor using a capital *A* and *B* as did *Davantes*.

A little later he gives an exercise which includes semibreves and minims, not on consecutive notes of the scale:—



By these examples it is quite evident that our author does not mean to make his number one a movable, key note, but a fixed sound. But in order that there should be no mistake about the duty of his number one, he gives half of the set to Psalm 1, as follows:—



The man is blessed that hath not bent | to walk wth men in sin



nor lead his life as sinners do | nor sit in scornful chair

Later on, a paragraph, about what formerly had been in use, is interesting:—

"Musicians in teaching to sing, did use to give unto the Notes of the degrees of the Voice these seven terms, *ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la, si*, as the French yet do; but now they teach by no more than four terms, *sol, la, mi, fa*, and so double the repetition of either sort of terms, until they come up to the number of eleven, as thus:—

Ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la, re, ut, re, mi, fa,
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11.

But now they change *ut, re*, into *sol, la*, and do teach thus:—

Sol, la, mi, fa, sol, la, fa, sol, la, mi, fa."

I am afraid our author shows by this example his ignorance of the subject about which he is writing, because this last represents the scale of *F*, though beginning on *C*, whereas, he started with a scale of *C*. To reproduce his original scale of *C* it should have been written thus:—

Fa, sol, la, fa, sol, la, mi, fa, sol, la, fa.

Unluckily for us, though fortunate for his reputation, in printing out the Psalms in full, he has put no numbers under the notes. In this respect he did not, as you see, follow the

example of the older French book. Whether he was cognizant of the previous book or not, it remains very interesting to find this hopelessly impracticable system turning up after an interval of two years. It is a wonder that he did not at once perceive that a *servé-ae* system made change of key impossible without some modified syllables or other device. How delightfully easy it would be to teach singing, if (as assumed by these two authors) all human beings possessed the sense of absolute pitch, and had but one uniform compass of voice!

The story of the *Paraphrases des Psautiers de David, en vers François par Antoine Godewa, évêque de Uzès et Vence* is probably familiar to you all. The French Catholics recognizing the enormous influence of Psalm-singing among the Huguenots named Bishop Godewa a version for the use of Catholics in 1625, as a sort of counterblast. Following on this an edict was issued forbidding the Huguenots to sing their *March* and *Éloge*. But a very unexpected result followed, the Huguenots rather than sing no Psalms, took the Catholic paraphrase into use. In order to suppress this, a cruel edict forbade them to sing metrical psalms in the French language. The ultimate result was that Godewa's version died out, after having gone through many editions, set to music by four different composers, Jacques de Fouy (1626), Antoine Lardinois (1633), Alexis Ancoisneux (1635), and Thomas Gobert (1639). The two most used were those mixed under the musical editorship of Lardinois and Gobert. I am so fortunate as to possess copies of both these books. Lardinois introduced some popular melodies into his tune, and Louis XIII. is credited with having composed four tunes to it. Gobert seems to have composed the whole of the tunes for his edition, and dull and dry they all are. But in the Preface which was included in some, not all of the copies of Gobert, the writer says "il ne faut pas omettre à bien faire les ports de voix, qui sont les transitions agréables, et les abaissements sur les notes suivantes." "On doit observer à propos les trémblemens, ou flexions de voix qui se font principalement sur les *me* et sur les *des*, et sur tout sans faire les cadences, dont la grace consiste à appayer les ports de voix qui doivent précéder." I believe this to be the earliest case in which musical graces were recommended for use in psalm-singing. But I fancy the Huguenots never sacrificed the beauty of a simple reciting in order to popularize their tunes. The *port de voix* was the shutting up or down to a note, and anticipating it in the rhythm. A trémblement was a sort of short shake, such as those so common in German and Saxon church music. The cadence was a full trill preceded and closed by a fermata. But this direction in Godewa's Psalter is an unconscious witness of

the fact known to all students of church music that the French from the latter part of the 17th century, up to the end of the 18th, absolutely razed the ground old plain-song of their church by profuse common-place ornamentation.

A French Psalter of 1685 is of interest, as being one of the very few in that language printed in London. Its title is "Les Psautiers de David mis en rime Francoise, par Clement Marot et Theodore de Bèze. à Londres. Imprimé par E. Everingham, 1685" (1700). The Bodleian copy of this is bound up with the complete French Bible, also printed by Everingham in 1685. The musical instructions are very short. After the usual lament over the difficulty of mastering singing by note, the reader is told that the lowest line of the staff is always *ut*. The C clef on the middle line being always used, a \sharp flat is required in the signature to form the diatonic scale of F. The leading note is called *si*, but when it is flattened in order to admit of a melody in the key of B flat, the note B flat is called *fa—e g.*—



ut (fa) re la si ut re mi



fa re la fa ut

A few years later, in 1694, some interesting instructions are found in "A Collection of some verses out of the Psalms of David; raised to several occasions. Composed in two parts, Cantus and Bassus, being the common tunes to the Psalms in metre now used in Parish Churches. To which is added, some instructions for singing of them. Collected by Mr. Daniel Warner. Revised by Mr. Henry Purcell.

"In the Sewey. Printed by E. Jenyns; and sold by the author at his house at Twicken in Galeshire. 1694." (From *Ivo*.)

This is a selection from forty-four of the Sternhold and Hopkins version of the Psalms, with the words and music placed continuously from beginning to end; the *cantus* on the verse, the *bassus* on the *refrain*. But the Canticles and a few "Hymns" are printed in the ordinary way with the treble over the bass.

The compiler in his Preface finds fault with Ravenscroft for having given the melody (plain-song) to the Tenor voice, and for giving it "prov'd with the C clef at C \sharp g." therefore he has followed Haynes's Psalter with music in three parts, and has used nothing but the G and F clefs, and, to still

further simplify it, he has given the tones in two parts only. One sentence in the Preface may require a little explanation. The author says: "Those who shall make use of these Books may sing without the Scots way of reading the words, and do it in a standing posture." This means that as the music is continuously printed over the whole of the words, there is no necessity for the Clerk or Minister to read out the words of each line before it is sung. This remarkable system of pulling up at the end of every line in order to hear the words of the next, is still kept up in some of the outlying districts of Scotland. The Scots used to sit to sing, and stand when praying; Mr. Daniel Warner, no doubt with a view to the better expression of congregational songs, wisely suggests a standing posture for Psalm-singing. With regard to the tempo of tunes, Mr. Warner is concise; he says: "As to the Tunes, they are neither swift nor slow, but of a fit mean between dulness and precipitancy." I am afraid the writer, could he have been to Paris or Lyons-singing in these days, would find that we have not yet discovered this "fit mean between dulness and precipitancy." The diagram of the Gamut is extended beyond the old limits, namely, from CC fa sol to d fa re in Aff , that is from C_1 to a'' . This is an intimation that modifications were beginning to realize the inadequacy of the Compass of the Heptachordal system, merely C_1 to a'' . The limitation must have been so obvious that it seems extraordinary that theorists should have adhered to it so long, especially if it be remembered that the possibility of enlarging its ambitus had been proved by the many instruction books issued for the Harpsichord. A century before this particular psalm-book was issued, namely, in Morley's "Plaine and easie Introduction," you may remember Philametes asks his Master why the Scale "was devised of XX. notes and no more," to which his Master replies, "Because that compass was the reach of most voices: so that vnder Gamut the voice seemed as a kind of *Armenyng*, and above *E* is a kinde of constrained *swinging*."

This answer seems to have satisfied the curiosity of Philametes in 1597, but in 1634 we find both the "humming" and "swinging" authorized in this book with the name of Henry Purcell as reviser. The colonization in the Select Psalms now under our notice is on the system of fa sol la fa sol la mi fa . This method had at this period become firmly established in this country owing to the widespread influence of two popular educational works, Playford's "Introduction to the Skill of Musick," first issued in 1654, and Christopher Simpson's "Compendium," first issued in 1687. Both these works passed through a large number of editions. Rhyming verses were taught to young

people misreading the way to localize the *si*. These rules are printed in the instructions before us.

Our author uses some curious terms, he speaks of "beaking of notes" where we should now say "singing intervals." Another expression which he uses is of importance as showing the growth of musical terminology at this time, the close of the seventeenth century. He describes three clefs (although in the book he only uses two of them), the *G sol re ut*, *C sol fa ut*, and *F fa ut*, that is, the Treble, Alto or Tenor, and Bass clefs, and he says these are the three signed clefs, a term, you may remember, used by Daye, just 120 years previously. But his expression also implies that there might be other "clefs" not in the signature, showing that there were clefs or keys which could exist without being signed. Such was a fact, for at this time we apparently find music in the key of B flat with only one flat in the signature, and sharp keys had usually one less sharp in the signature than we should now give, the required leading note being made by an accidental. It is evident therefore that the words *clef* and *key* were not yet completely distinguished.

"The Psalm-Singer's Necessary Companion," published in 1700 (although the Preface is dated 1699), follows Parcell's good example. The author says plainly "there be some notes in Vocal and many notes in Instrumental Musick that doth (sic) exceed those [Gimmes ut and e la]" and he too carries his diagram from C to *e*. Twenty years later (about 1720) a certain Israel Holdroyd published "The Spiritual-Man's Companion," in which he not only somewhat extends his diagram of the Gamut, but he makes it do duty for the keys of G, F, B flat, E flat, and A flat, G, D, A, and E. His attempt to push the (then) remote keys into the old system shows with what deep-seated reluctance the human mind casts away anything clothed in the shabby and tattered garb of respectable age. I will now give Holdroyd's diagram in full. The reader will at once notice that if he had simply stuck to the list of leading notes (see) at the bottom, the whole of the superstructure might have been dispensed with.

"The Gamut or Scale of Music, as allowed by the Moderns: The first two Columns of which, every Learner must of Necessity observe to get perfectly off; beginning at G in Alt, and proceeding to CC, ut fa ut, and then from CC, sol fa ut, to G in Alt. Ascending and Descending, till he com with Reafness, Ascend and Descend upon each Note and Space, as in the Gamut, always observing to count from the Cliff where ever he finds it plac'd"—

printed by the side of each note will soon prove to any one how completely the hexachordal system was alien to what we now understand by a movable *do*. This is more apparent in the attempts our ancestors made to solfe a melody in the minor mode. Here are the first and last lines of *Psalmus Martii*, from Marot and Bâst as solfed,—

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11

re re re re re fa fa si re mi re

12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22

re re

I have numbered all the notes for reference. Nos. 1, 2, 3, are *re* in the *c sol fa* of hexachord, but as Nos. 6 and 7 exceed the compass of that hexachord, the *g sol re* of *fa* has to be called *re*, therefore Nos. 4 and 5 are *re*, this hexachord continues to the note *A*, No. 11. The notes Nos. 12 and 13 are below the *g sol re* of group, they have therefore to be reckoned from *C*, thus they become *fa*, and No. 14 becomes *sol*; but note No. 15 can only be found in the *f fa* of hexachord, therefore it is *fa*, but Nos. 16 to 23 can be found in the *c sol fa* of hexachord, so that tune in *D* minor is brought to a happy conclusion on *re*.

I conceived this extract to the study of enthusiasts who talk about a 16th century system of movable *do*. When in the middle or towards the close of the 17th century the syllable *ut* was used to fill up the gap of the leading note, and was kept solely for this purpose by rejecting the previous *ut* or *mi* and substituting *fa sol la*, then a veritable movable *do* began to be evolved, but not better.

There exists a most interesting French Poetie printed in London in 1702. The title is "Les Passions de David, ou sa vers Française, par Cl. Marot et Theodat de Bâst. Nouvelle édition toute en musique, et dans laquelle on a ajouté sous chaque ligne du chant ordinaire, une Basse Chantante en parties. Londres. Imprimé par Guillaume Pasquet, en Aldersgate Street. MDCCXII.

The words are printed between the two parts, Tenor and Bass; the book has a very sensible preface, and one page of explanation of keys and scales. It was prepared and issued by a Commission, who succeeded in turning out a useful work, beautifully printed and very correct. Incidentally, the author of the preface states an amusing fact. He says: "Ordinairement amongst the Protestant Refugees, they used

to sing the Psalm in 4 or 5 parts as composed by Gabrieli or Claudio "ce qui faisoit une très agréable harmonie"; but that when they sang only the treble and bass, leaving out the middle parts, one noticed that the harmony was very incomplete and "pleine de faux accords." Naturally so! but the bass part given in this Psalm is good and satisfactory.

"Les Psaumes de David, mis en vers François, Barrea et approuvés par le Synode Walon des Provinces-Unies, Nouvelle Edition. A la Haye, Chez P. Gosse & J. Neaulme-1772." This book gives the most concise and exact Directions I have ever seen. "Avertissement. Principe de la Voix de B-mol: c'est à-dire, quand il y a un \flat presche la Clef, il faut toujours prendre Sol." (This signifies, that when there is a flat on B in the signature, the line on which the clef stands will always represent Sol).—

Ut ce mi fa sol la si ut | Ut si la sol fa mi re ut.

Re la sol mi la ce ut sol la sol fa ut.

Re la sol ut la re la fa sol la fa mi fa ce re.

"Principe de la Voix de B-carré: c'est à-dire; que lors qu'il n'y a point de \flat presche la clef, il faut toujours prendre Ut sur la Clef" (meaning, that when there is no flat in the signature, the line on which the clef is placed will always be Ut).

Sol la ut ut re mi fa sol; sol fa mi re ut si la sol.

Ut ut ut sol fa ce re re sol ut la si la sol.

Si ut ut ut re sol ut sol mi ce ut la ut ut re sol re.

The secret of the possibility of such conclusions is discovered when the book is opened, for all the traces are on the C clef,

and are either placed in the open key, or that of F. I should add that the music is written out in full, in a small but beautifully clear type.

The following is concerning "Les Pasteurs de David ou les deux Pasteurs, arias et apprenus, par les Pasteurs et les Professeurs de l'Eglise et de l'Academie de Geneve. Nouvelle édition avec les cantiques sacres, à laquelle on a ajouté la Basse, qu'on a réduite sur une seule Clef pour la commodité de ceux qui chantent cette partie, et où la musique est très exactement corrigée. A Geneve chez Pierre Fellet, 1798."

In this Pastor the Tenor (melody) and Bass are both given, one facing the other on the opposite page. All the melodies are so arranged that they appear to stand in the key of F, in the Alto clef with one flat in the signature. The Bass part is in the F clef placed on the third line. The two staves are therefore the Alto and Bass-clef.

But the "Principes pour le Tenor" and the "Principes pour la Basse," which give preliminary Exercises in singing, show some curious anomalies. The author chooses a fixed *ut* on the note F, for his Tenor part (melody), calling the seventh of the scale *si*. When however he wishes to give an exercise in the key of B *flat*, he calls the *si* both ascending and descending, by the name *fa*, thus —



But the Bass-part receives still more remarkable treatment. An exercise practically in the key of C minor is given, with the following extraordinary singing —



The above is, as far as I know, outside the pale of any known system. Calling the note *A flat* in the key of C minor *si*, because he has assumed a fixed *ut* reckoning from F can only be looked upon as a piece of ingenious willfulness.

Nevertheless, the writer must have been a good musician, as proved by the excellence of his two-part writing.

I give a specimen; it is *Ps. cxxxv.*, the tone of which, as you know, because our Old men. The Bass part is worth examining, it is very bold, and forms a most satisfactory harmony. It should be noticed that the art of dividing the words into syllables had not yet been attempted in Pastors.

44 On Musical Introductions in certain Metrical Psalter-
Tones.



Vous, saints Ma-ri-tes de Sei-gneurs,
Beats.



Vous, saints Ma-ri-tes de Sei-gneurs,



Qui, de-vo-er à nos hon-neurs,



Qui, de-vo-er à nos hon-neurs,



Vil-ler le mal, dans ce mal-ice,



Vil-ler le mal, dans ce mal-ice,



Pré-ter-le-ur le voler à ce mal-ice.



Pré-ter-le-ur le voler à ce mal-ice.

(The above intcribed.)



Considering how slightly the Reformation influenced the general masses of the Italian people, it is not a matter of surprise that so few Italian medieval Psalters exist. In the earliest of those that were issued, no instructions are given. But a "Breve Introductione al Canto Formo" in the form of question and answer is found in "La et sacra salmi di Davide (sic) Tradem ed accomodati alle melodie di A. Lebrasser da Andrea G. Planta. M.L.C. In Strada nella Signoria di Giovanni Jansette—1740 (8vo)." In this there still remains a wish to cling to hexachordal systems, but they have to be politely bowed out, e.g.:

"4. Quanti e quali son le note?"

Proprietamente son 6. *Ut, Re, Mi, Fa, Sol, La.*

Ma ordinariamente si usa 8. *Ut, Re, Mi, Fa, Sol, La, Si, Ut.*"

After instruction in notes, time, rests, and keys, a table of exercises in intervals is given. A foot-note at the end of the Introduction is interesting as showing that the question as to whether the melody should be placed in the Tenor part or the Treble was still unsettled.

"**168.** La voce ordinaria del Coro è il Tenore, ma quando v'è posto questo segno d'una mano, si cangiano le voci, ed in vece del Tenore si canta il Discanto." In our own country the Psalter-books of this period were by no means uniform in this respect, and the free position of the melody led to disputes of a very warm kind. The mode is in four parts, printed separately, two on the tenor, two on the treble.

In the early Scotch Psalters no instructions in the rudiments of music were given. Such portions do not appear till the first half of the eighteenth century, they are not therefore of any special interest. But in England at this same period an extraordinary number of Psalter-books of all sorts and kinds came into existence, it is no exaggeration to say that during this century they appeared by hundreds. They generally contained only "elegant extracts" from the Psalter, but it was fashionable to prefix instructions which gradually grew into long Treatises containing a vast amount of matter of no use whatever to the ordinary psalm-singer. Many began us with a history of music from the days of Jubal to David, quotations from the early fathers, and not only an explanation of notation, time, and keys, but rules of harmony, counterpoint, canon; sometimes winding up with a Dictionary of musical terms, not one of which can be discovered in the music of the book itself!

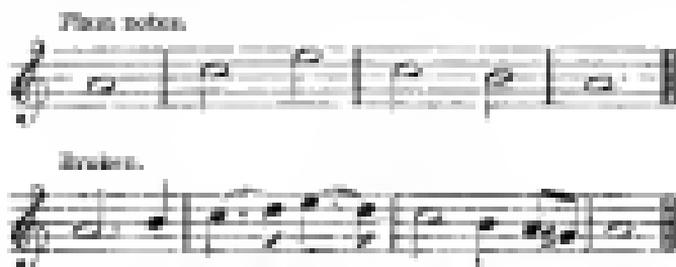
That conceited old pedant William Tass'er, in his "Harmony of Zion" (1776), adds to all the above, "a Mathematical Demonstration of the Nature of Sound"! "General rules for the composition of two, three, four, five, six, seven,

and eight musical parts." "General rules for tuning the Harpsichord." Why all this? But we now also find amongst the subjects thought necessary to be mastered by those who wished to join in the singing in church, one which tells its own sad story; I allude to musical graces. John Arnold's "Complete Psalter," published in 1750, contains besides the usual useless mass of talk, a chapter on "the several Graces used in music." In order that these should be no mistake as to these graces being intended for vocal, and not instrumental use, he says: "The first and most principal Grace necessary to be learned is the Trill, or Shake; that is, to move or shake your voice distinctly on one syllable the distance of a Whole Tone" :—



The author continues: "The Trill ought to be used on all descending prick'd notes, and always before a Close, also on all descending sharp'd notes and on all descending Semibreves, but none shorter than Crotchets."

Imagine the horrible result if this Direction were carried out by a congregation! He also says: "Another Grace in Music is called the Grace of Transition; that is, to slur or break the Note, to sweeten the Roughness of a Leap; of which see the following example" :—



These remarks are neither new nor interesting in themselves, but have a serious import when applied to psalm-singing. The constant appearance of Graces in these later Instructions proves the unrenewability of bad taste. They are inculcated in "David's Harp well tuned," 1713, and more elaborately in "Divine Melody," 1758, in which eight kinds of Graces are enumerated and explained.

We are all familiar with the result. The fine old tunes of previous generations were either discarded altogether or so loaded with graces as to be hardly recognizable. A vast literature of commonplace florid melodies sprang up; secular music of many kinds, especially glee, was adapted to the Psalm; a considerable number of tunes consisted of soft parts followed by only the last five notes; and a taste for repeating the words developed itself to a remarkable extent. These excesses intrude on pure psalmody resulted eventually in ceasing the congregation of all share in the singing, and the establishment of the West gallery quartet of voices. And towards the close of the century, instead of finding a few Hymns in the Psalm-books, we begin to find a few Psalms in *veritable Hymn-books.**

My task is now nearing its close. You have with me peered into the archives of three centuries, and in addition to the many interesting details of the practice of the art of music disclosed to us by these Introductions and Prefaces, we find displayed before us the broad fact that whereas in the infancy of metrical Psalm-singing, worshippers were directed to learn the Gallicantu system "back and forward, upward and downward" if they wished to take their proper part in the holy song, in the latter days they were told that in order to do so, they must learn *Eight kinds of Glees!* What a change! and what a powerful light this throws on the story of the Psalm tune! We began this evening to trace the steps taken for its nurture almost from its birth, we have passed along the path of its healthy existence, and at the last we watch it, diseased and dying.

The eternal succession of creation, eddiness, and dissolution, breeds its replaceable chain round forms of *Act*, just as it does around all that is; either in being, or conception. Yet we must not forget that this inevitable and relentless dissolution is itself providing matter out of which new creations spring, though only to rush into the whirl of short-lived existence. But what a bright and hopeful thought it is for the worker in art, that all which glides off the shore of the present into the dark unfathomable ocean of the future, is being dissolved into its matter and pure elements, as being more worthy of a new organization, a new life, on the marge of the everlasting, *Unstable, circle.* Yet it is impossible to reflect on the decadence of Psalmody without regretting that it did not die a more dignified death. Nevertheless, these apparently worthless remains, nay, we might almost say, this foul and revolting residuum of once-pure Psalmody was soon to be called into new life by the stirring, vivifying

* Take, for example, the two deeply edifying "Wesleyan books" "Sacred Melody" (1784) and "Sacred Harmony" (1786)

words of evangelists; and from it was destined to burst forth and blossom that beautiful type of worm-incubated lyric poem and sweet discursive melody, which, happily wedded together, have raised a ladder on which thousands have climbed and are now climbing from this poor earth to higher realms of thought. Go into any building where are gathered together those who profess and call themselves Christians, and the swelling, mighty volume of sound will tell you, in no uncertain way, that dissolution has been followed by re-creation, the new has indeed come. Yet the old has not been entirely lost to us, for we find ourselves now and again re-joining our ancestors in one of their much cherished metrical psalms and stately tunes; and we rejoice thus to record our gratitude to those early reformers who in times of trouble and distress, and hampered by a network of difficulties and dangers, left us a noble example, and many a priceless jewel for the church's store of treasures.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—I think if anything justifies the existence of this Society it is such a remarkable paper as we have listened to to-night, and I congratulate you that on this occasion, when we have elected so many new members, we should have heard a paper read by our President of such immense antiquarian knowledge and research. We must congratulate ourselves that the President has the time and the opportunity and the inclination to do such work. No one can perform a more valuable work for the musical art of this country, and I am sure we hope Sir John will be spared for many years in the repose he has so well earned. For the musical youth of this country who have little leisure for research of this kind, these papers are of enormous value for think what the composition of this extraordinary history must have meant in time and labour. As far as I am concerned, it has taught me much. It has made some matters perfectly plain to me. With regard to the corruption of tunes, one is very pleased to find it came from a French source. I am glad it was not from an English or a German source. It is the right French work that we admit so much of flippant frothy, but which is not well grafted on to the music of the church. I was very glad to hear those admirable closing words. I think it is very important, although we have swept away the froppery of French frothy, not to sweep away the modern beauty of some of our tunes. I am sure our President has set a good example in the tunes he has

lately published and the excellent prices he has written, which I hope you will all read. I know there is an impression that we should have tunes in the church only of a dreary and dry description. I think we have an argument in the preface Sir John has written to his own tunes. The reason why these people published these prefaces of which we have heard seems to me possibly the same as the reason why we publish in our authors books a long account of all the composers. I think it is that the people who do not care to listen to the sermon may while away their time by reading them, and I should be very sorry to see them abandoned. At Westminster I find many of the inhabitants of the stalls given to reading all about those musicians whose music they hear. Just as Mr. Pepys also, you will remember, enjoyed himself in church too with his perspective glasses, I have no doubt he would have read one of those terrible prefaces—probably he did. I have only to ask that you will show your appreciation of this paper and the historical knowledge Sir John has displayed in it.

The vote of thanks was passed unanimously.

Dr. CROSSLAND.—There is no doubt that this breathered use and the change of the clef and figures come from the recollection of the old service books, where they had only four lines and were perpetually obliged to change the clef. Doubtless that was the cause of this; they could not get rid of the feeling which hung about them. There was one other interesting point I had noted. I have a copy of our National Anthem, "God save the King," printed certainly in 1745 or 1748, in four parts, with the melody still in the tenor. One other fact I would like to register, fearing we may go away and forget or misquote some remarks of our chairman; it is that these distortions and ornamentations belong to the eighteenth and not to the previous century—at least, in England.

Sir JOHN STAMER.—The Paraph I quoted as the earliest instance in which people were told to do it; but we cannot tell what may have been done before that.

Dr. CROSSLAND.—Pepys probably wanted to introduce it into the tune which he wrote but did not compose. "Gave not an organ."

Mr. ARTHUR M. FOX.—May I suggest that the eighteen or twenty a minute includes the time taken between respirations? When your lungs are at rest you will find there are several seconds between the inspiration and the next expiration. You will find it comes to about sixty or seventy a minute.

The CHAIRMAN.—But are we supposed to make a pause at the end of each breath?

Sir JOHN STAMER.—I am very much obliged to the gentlemen who have spoken. There is so very much to be learnt

about this. This is such an immensely long paper that I could not read it all. It seems to be absolutely a fellow field, and in important books like dictionaries of hymnology you will find very little, if any, information about these musical introductions. I have a list here of some hundreds of books that I have examined. When you do find something it is almost always interesting. But I am quite certain that any other hearers than "harmonical brethren" would have got up and walked away before I could have got to the end of this lengthy discourse.

DECEMBER 11, 1920

W. G. McNAUGHT, Esq., M.A., D.D.,
IN THE CHAIR.

*THE TEACHINGS OF HARMONY AS A BASIS
OF EAR TRAINING.*

By FRANK J. SAYLER, D.Mus., Oxon.

In composing a paper the writer frequently feels it a duty to begin with an apology for introducing such a subject. In the present case I feel that no apology whatever is needed, for to those interested in the teaching of music, the training of the ear of their pupils is a subject which is rapidly becoming one of the greatest importance. It is still in its infancy, but to the large number of conscientious teachers it is presenting itself with an ever-increasing force. We have been at great pains in England to secure that the rudiments of music shall be taught intelligently to the young pupil. Every scheme of examination is practical, as well as in theoretical, music has insisted on all candidates properly understanding the basis of the art. How greatly the musical perception and intelligence of the average pupil has improved by this means, anyone may see who will but compare a musical schoolgirl of twenty years ago with one of to-day.

But we are, if we are true to our art, always trying for further progress, and thus it has become apparent that in our endeavours to teach the rudiments, we have done so too much from the theoretical standpoint only, and have not combined with it the practical side.

The child is taught that a certain shaped note is called a half-note or minims, while another shaped note is called a quarter note or crotchets, and that the latter is half the length of the former.

This is the theoretical side. But do we at once try to train the practical side by singing or playing a passage and asking our little pupil to tell us which were the half-notes and which were the quarter-notes? In other words, do we train the child's ear to recognise the musical fact which was represented by the musical symbol?

Again, we teach our pupils major scales, minor scales, and intervals, on paper. They can, perhaps, tell you all about them when they see them printed, but the training of the mind's ear by means of the ear we have hitherto neglected.

We are now beginning to recognize that it is not sufficient if our pupils can show us a major third on paper! They must be able to tell it when heard. Hence, in this desire on the part of teachers to train their pupils as well as they possibly can, the subject of ear training—*i.e.*, the development of the power of hearing to analyze sounds, has become of more and more importance.

Considering, therefore, the great bearing that it has on the further progress of our musical art, I feel no apology is needed as a preface to any attempt to further aid the study of ear training.

As preparatory, it may not be amiss to briefly notice the history of the subject in England. Practically for the last fifty years, until a few years ago, it has been only taught in connection with class singing, and in class singing only by those who taught on tonic solfa principles. Grasping the great doctrine of good teaching—the fact before the sign that represents it—the late Mr. Curwen sought to find qualities pertaining to each scale degree, by which the singer might recognize on what step of the ladder of the major scale he was.

Hence the tonic was called the Strong or firm note.

The dominant, the Grand or bright note.

The mediant, the Steady or calm note.

The leading note was the Piercing tone.

The supertonic, the Rousing tone.

The submediant, the Sad or weeping note.

The subdominant, the Desolate tone.

By the perception of these peculiarities, the child's mind was taught to recognize and name each degree of the major scale.

While we may be tempted to smile, especially those of us who imperfectly realize as yet that the relationship of every note to its tonic is the basis of all music, these first attempts at locating the mental effects of each degree have proved an important beginning to the development of ear training.

In many of them there is the germ of truth, even if in others there is a superabundance of picturesqueness.

It is hardly necessary to do more than mention the fact that in sight-singing teaching, tonal relationship has far outgrown its early connection with the tonic solfa, and has practically become the recognized method of teaching the young singer to read music.

Turning to the history of ear training in instrumental music, until a few years ago it was almost a blank in England.

In the old Society of Arts' Examination in practical music a test was given, but that was in absolute pitch. Notes were struck having no connection with each other, and the young candidate was required to tell the absolute pitch of these sounds.

Such tests were, of course, a farce, because the pupil was either endowed by nature with the gift of absolute pitch and so could not help answering rightly, or nature had not given her the gift and in such early years she had not been able to acquire it. Special marks might therefore just as well have been awarded for the possession of blue eyes.

The promoters of the subject of ear training seem to have been the professors of the dictation classes at the Royal College of Music and at the Royal Academy. Gradually an interest in the subject was aroused, and the authorities responsible for the examinations in connection with Trinity College and the Incorporated Society of Musicians decided to require tests in ear training from all candidates.

At the annual Conference of the latter body—the Incorporated Society of Musicians—at Plymouth, in January, 1899, a most important advance on the subject was made in an admirable paper on "The Training of the Ear," by Dr. Skinn. It is not too much to say that in the eloquent and forcible address that he gave, he did more to drive home the immense importance of his subject—not in the realm of sight-singing alone, but in all musical study—than has anything that has taken place.

Following on this excellent paper Dr. Skinn produced last year the first part of a textbook on the subject.

Such is the brief history of ear training up to the present time.

In the further development of the subject it has occurred to me that it may not be inadvisable to approach it from an absolutely fresh point of view. While the singer treats it from the melodic standpoint, our piano pupils will approach it from a harmonic. Again, it has been said that to ear receives a melody without instinctively supplying a simple harmony. This is certainly true to some extent, because those who combine in sight singing know that passages in which the singer's mind cannot apply a natural chord progression are always the most difficult. For instance, a singer will readily sing:—



54 *The Teachings of Harmony as a Basis of Ear Training.*

C, G, B, D, C, because the ear accepts the dominant harmony of G, B, D. A singer will find C, G, B, E, C more difficult, since it implies a stranger chord, G, B, E, the major thirteenth.

Apart from such interesting considerations as these, it must be palpable to all that harmony is the essential factor in the music of the present day as we meet with it in our everyday work.

Let us therefore subject the teachings of harmony, as it appeals to the ear, to a more critical examination. We will begin with discords, as being those which strike the ear most forcibly in desiring definite progression.

If I play the progression at No. 1—



and pass on the third chord, the ear immediately demands that the F sharp shall ascend while the A flat descends.

The chord A flat, C, F sharp is the augmented sixth on the flattened sixth of the scale. We may therefore say that the mental effect, that is, the effect produced on the mind by the augmented sixth, is that the extreme notes shall move away from one another by diatonic semitones. Although other progressions are possible, yet to the ear this is the most natural.

Examine the progression No. 2, first on paper, and then in actual fact, passing on the third chord:—



What does the ear demand? The bass must ascend, the A flat and the F must descend. When, therefore, we strike this chord of the diminished seventh the ear receives a definite mental picture, and instinctively requires that these notes should move as given above.

Descending from these more extreme discords, let us take the milder discord of the dominant seventh, as given in progression No. 3:—

No. 3

The image shows two staves of music. The top staff is labeled 'a' and the bottom staff is labeled 'b'. Both staves show a dominant seventh chord (F major 7) in two different voicings. In 'a', the notes are F4, A4, C5, and E5. In 'b', the notes are F4, A4, C5, and G4. The notes are written as whole notes on a five-line staff.

Focusing on the second chord, the ear at once asks that the treble shall ascend, the alto descend, and the bass return to the tonic. Even if we invert the chord and put it in five parts as at No. 3, *b*, still the same mental effect is apparent; the subdominant—the F in the melody—falling, the leading note—the D in the bass—rising, and the dominant seventh being most naturally followed, according to the teaching of the ear, by the tonic triad. This, therefore, is its mental effect.

From this study of discords—both extreme and mild—we may deduce the fact that the ear makes of each a definite picture, and that picture of each is in these cases dependent on the resolution to something which will produce on the mind a state of rest.

This constant striving after a point of rest is a feature in our music, the importance of which we hardly at first realize. A German writer has said that the desire of contrast is the underlying principle of all music, and he even traces in the simple progression of tonic, dominant, tonic (No. 4), the germ of musical form. Thus, the tonic chord, which is itself at first satisfying to the ear, at length begins to pall, and we ask for something to contrast with it, to which the dominant chord responds, affording exactly the counterpart by its brightness and moving power. But this again brings about in the mind a desire for repose, which is satisfied by the return of the tonic. The same writer goes on to show that the early song form is but an extension of this idea of "rest—motion—rest." The first section is in the tonic, the contrasting section is in the dominant or other key, from which the ear demands we shall return, and repeat the first section, ending on the tonic.

This desire to return to a state of rest is therefore a salient feature in harmony, and we shall find that it will afford us most useful aid.

It is, in the first place, necessary to determine what are the points of rest to which all chords seem striving. They are to be found in the notes of the tonic triad itself. On these, and on no others in the scale will the ear rest satisfied. The

typical feature of the tonic chord is the feeling of perfect completion which it contains. It is this feature which we regard as the mental effect of the chord. It is true that it has various degrees of completion, according to the position of the chord. Thus, the tonic chord, with root in the bass and an octave of the root in the treble, gives the best idea of rest, while the weakest effect of rest is apparent in the second inversion of the tonic chord, where the interval of the fourth with the bass makes itself felt as a discord demanding further progression.

Not only is the tonic chord satisfactory to the ear as a point of rest, but melodically it will be found that each of the notes of which it consists will also, in a greater or less degree, satisfy the ear and demand no further progression. Thus, the tonic most fully arouses this feeling and seems to spread around itself a home-like feeling or sensation of finality. In a similar manner, though in a lesser degree, the fifth of the tonic chord—the dominant of the scale—will satisfy us, and ask for no further motion; while the third of the chord—the mediant of the scale—also contents us, and gives the ear such a feeling of rest that no further progression is compulsory.

Thus we see that while in harmony it is the tonic chord which is the central power of repose in the scale, that power is so strong in the chord that its force is extended to each note of which the chord consists.

Having sounded our tonic chord, let us now sound the dominant triad immediately after it:—



In this conjunction what have we found? Is the ear satisfied with this second chord? Is it at rest? Not scarcely so. The feeling of rest and repose has entirely gone, and we recognise in the dominant chord that a bright expectancy has been awakened of further motion. This bright feeling of further progression is typical of the dominant chord even without the seventh of the chord being added. It may be called the "mental effect" of the chord on the fifth degree.

The position of the chords in No. 4 is such that the tonic in the melody falls to the leading-note, and the primary sensation produced in the mind is that this "leading-note" should, as its name implies, "lead up" to the tonic. Even

supposing there is someone in this room who has never heard of notes of the scale producing effects on the mind, yet I suppose no one present will deny the desire or tendency of the leading-note to ascend to the tonic. I have only met one such person, and it may not be worth to digress for a moment to consider this exceptional case. Those who possess the gift of absolute pitch (and I do not think they are 1 in 10,000 of the population) are often either entirely unable, or else only partially able, to understand how music appeals to us who, not having the gift of absolute pitch, hear and accept our music by relative pitch.

To such people, tonal relationship—that is, the relationship of every note to its tonic—appears only very slightly. Thus, if the possessor of absolute pitch listen to a symphony in C he will hear the second subject in G. They will see to him two absolute and separate keys. But to those of us who have not the gift of absolute pitch, we should hear the principal subject given out in the tonic, and, when the second subject arrived, we should hear that it was in the dominant of the original key, and thus the inter-relationship of the two sections will be established. In fact, to quote the words used recently by Mr. George Langley, "the whole apprehension of the centre of pitch is (after the first note of a composition has been heard) merely one of relativity."

To the possessor of absolute pitch it is not always so, and, to such, a note will sometimes appeal so fully as a certain definite sound as one definite pitch, that its tonal relationship will be entirely obliterated.

It was in this way that the musical student in question perceived sound. I struck the leading note as part of the dominant triad, but the student honestly assured me that she could not perceive that it had any tendency to ascend, and that she had always wondered why it was called the "leading-note."

In conclusion of this little parenthesis, this fully explains the difficulty that teachers with absolute pitch have in teaching ear training to pupils without it.

Returning to Example No. 4, the leading-note may therefore be taken as the note having the strongest of mental effects in its tendency to lead up to the tonic.

This is the case in all triads in the scale which contain the leading-note:—

No. 5

The mediant triad is most satisfactorily followed by one which admits of the leading-note ascending, either, as at No. 3, 4, to the submediant chord, or, as at No. 5, 6, to the tonic chord. In the diminished triad, either in unaltered form (as at *c*) or inverted form (as at *d*), the same desire of the leading-note to ascend is palpably clear.

Let us now place the tonic and dominant chords in another position, in order to discover what harmony teaches us about the supertonic of the scale. Striking the first and second chords of No. 6—



and, passing on the second, we instinctively feel a desire that the second degree may fall again and the tonic chord be resumed. It is true the second degree might ascend to the mediant, but that is not what the ear expects as the most natural progression, and for this reason: were the supertonic to rise to the mediant it would reach a note which is not so strong a point of rest as is the tonic, and hence the ear leads us downwards. That this tendency of the second degree to fall to the tonic is, melodically, very marked, I presume few would dispute. It is the penultimate note of every contour given in counterpoint, and it is therefore self-evident that the ancient writers considered "supertonic, tonic" as in their time the natural termination of every melody. On turning to the first twelve tunes in Macfarren's "Old English Tunes," ten out of the twelve thus end. Since, therefore, the solving after a point of rest seems inherent in every chord other than the tonic, which itself is the point of rest, we may regard the two notes of the dominant chord as desiring to seek repose in passing to the tonic.

The mental picture of the leading-note is to ascend to the tonic.

The mental picture of the supertonic is to fall to the tonic.

And what does the octave of the dominant itself do in this progression?

The dominant being itself a point of rest it remains stationary. Returning for a moment to No. 3, 4 and 5, we find that in the progression of the mediant triad the same thing was apparent: the octave of the mediant, being itself a point of rest, remains stationary. Do not misunderstand my

meaning. I am far from saying that the teachings of harmony always show that the tonic, the dominant, and the mediant always remain stationary. I would simply say, taking the simplest progressions of the primary and the chief of the secondary triads this is so.

The tendency of the supertonic to fall is also found in other chords besides the dominant triad—



Thus, in No. 7, a and b, an octave of the root in the supertonic chord itself, or at c, an third of the diminished triad, it seems natural to thus progress.

Let us now turn to the subdominant triad and place it to follow the tonic triad as at No. 8, passing on the second chord—



It is necessary that we first notice the peculiar effect of the chord itself. It does not possess that firm stability that belongs to the tonic chord, nor does it produce that bright effect of motion that we found to be characteristic of the dominant chord.

Its effect is one of dulness, or, as suggested to me by Sir Hubert Parry, a "clouded" effect. In this it seems the antithesis of the dominant, and hence the three primary triads present to us three clear contrasts: the tonic, stability and rest; the dominant, brightness and motion; the subdominant, dulness or cloud. It was this clouded effect of the subdominant, both as chord and as scale degree, which was evidently felt by the late Mr. Garwin, when he wrote as the mental effect of "fah" that it was "desolate or awe-inspiring."

As I said before, even if we write at this ultra-picturesque description yet there is a germ of truth in it.

The general effect of the subdominant triad we may thus take to be its dulness; and this is also apparent in the melodic nature of the fourth degree of the scale.

But harmony teaches us more than this. Let us sound again No. 8 pausing on the second chord. Is the ear at rest? Not at all, but it feels instinctively that the simplest progression would be to follow the subdominant chord by the tonic, the fourth degree thus falling to the third. Let us examine other simple chord progressions in which the subdominant note occurs—

No. 9

In No. 9, *a*, we have the dominant seventh in which the fourth degree is that discordant seventh, and therefore desires resolution by falling to the third. Whenever, in the dominant series of discords, the original seventh (the subdominant) is present, it will thus always want to descend. Thus in No. 9, *b*, we have the major sixth, where the *F* desires to progress downwards. At No. 9, *c*, we have the diminished triad, which is here of course only an incomplete form of a dominant seventh with the root omitted. Here also the subdominant descends. Even in No. 9, *d*, where *F* occurs as third of the supertonic triad, it still wants to descend.

Hence we may say that harmony teaches us that the effect of the fourth degree on the mind is "dulness," and that it has a desire or tendency to fall to the third degree. We have now to examine the other note of the subdominant chord—*i.e.*, the submediant—

No. 10

Let us again hear the tonic chord, this time with the fifth degree at the top, and follow it by the subdominant chord with the sixth degree of the scale in the treble (No. 10), pausing on the second chord.

The ear is again not at rest, but desires that the tonic chord may be resumed as a point of rest, the sixth degree thus falling to the fifth of the scale.

We have now to examine other simple progressions to see if they substantiate this tendency of the sixth degree to fall—



In No. 11, *a*, we find that the triad of the sixth degree passes naturally to that on the mediant. The bass here rises a fifth; there is one note in common between the chords; it is the most natural progression from the sixth degree, and, in the melody, that degree falls to the fifth. In the second progression, at *b*, the sixth degree appears as the fifth of the major triad on the supertonic, and that chord is followed in its most natural way by the dominant chord—in fact, we may regard this as the most usual use of the supertonic triad. Here again the sixth degree of the scale falls to the fifth, passing then to a point of rest. On other occasions in the same progression we find the sixth degree passing up through the leading-note to find its ultimate goal in the tonic.

We may therefore rightly say that the sixth degree of the scale has a general tendency to fall to the dominant. As regards a distinct mental effect to the sixth degree we may seek in vain. It has been called in Mr. Carver's description the "sad note." This definition is clearly based on the fact that the relative minor scale begins on the sixth degree of the major, and, as the minor mode is more melancholy than the major mode, the degree on which it starts—the sixth degree of the major—was called the "sad note." But this is illogical since we are treating of the sixth in its relationship to its tonic, and not when it has become itself the new tonic of a minor scale. Again, harmony teaches us that the sixth degree is far more often used *and* as part of the relative minor chord than as part of it, since it is the third of the subdominant chord and the fifth of the supertonic, and in neither of these chords does the sixth degree give the ear an idea of sadness, as the following simple melodic passages will at once show—



In No. 12, *a*, *c*, and *d*, the note *A* is naturally harmonized by the ear with the primary triad of the subdominant. At *b*,

the progression shows the A in this example as part of the supertonic triad. In none of these cases does the sixth degree produce a "sad" effect on the mind.

Gathering together the results of our examination of the movements of scale degrees in the simplest harmonic progressions, we find that we have evolved an easy way for the young beginner in ear training by which each degree may be recognized.

Firstly, the degrees of the scale prove to be of two kinds in the effects that they produce on the mind: one class, which have been called the "strong notes," satisfy the ear, and consist of the tonic, which gives the most perfect idea of conclusion and rest; the dominant, which, in comparison with the tonic, sounds clear and bright, and the mediant, which sounds peaceful and calm. On these three scale-degrees, and on these only, the ear will rest satisfied and require no further progression. They are the three "points of rest" in the scale.

The other degrees are incomplete on the ear, and require further progression, and have for this reason been called the "weak notes."

Of these four, the leading-note, as its name implies, has a desire, or tendency, to lead up to the tonic; while the supertonic has a distinct tendency to fall to the tonic; the subdominant appeals to the ear by its dull or clouded effect and its desire to fall to the mediant; while the sixth degree—a rather colorless note—desires to fall to the dominant.

These deductions we are clearly entitled to make from the foregoing examination of simple harmonic progressions. I would, however, most emphatically ask that no one present should imagine that these tendencies and mental effects are always present. They are not, and no one would be as foolish as to say that they were. But thus we can, and do say, that being our suggestions on simple chord progressions, we have here a set of generalizations which will aid the young pupil of violinist to recognize and name the single degrees of the major scale.

To illustrate my remarks, I have brought with me a young pupil of about 14 years of age who has had one hour's total teaching in ear training, divided into twelve little lessons of five minutes each. I believe you will find her able to tell you accurately any degree in the chromatic scale that you may strike (having first given her the tonic) and also that she will be able to name every interval sounded between the tonic and any degree of the chromatic scale. And this is after one hour's teaching by means of the harmonic effects of the notes!

(Illustration with Miss Malinton.)

Extending our examination of harmony to the chief chords of the minor mode we, of course, take the tonic minor; for if the essence of all music is the relationship which exists between the tonic, or key-note, and the various degrees of the scale, that essence is as essential in a minor as in a major, and therefore C minor and C major must be compared—not C major and A minor.

Comparing C major with the harmonic form of C minor, we find only two notes different—viz., E flat, the minor third of the scale, and A flat, the minor sixth of the scale. Tracing the origin of the scale to the primary triads of the key we find the tonic a minor chord, having the minor third as its middle note, this minor third imparting to the whole chord a more sad or melancholy effect than had the major chord. The key-note and the dominant retain exactly their former character, the one of finality, the other of brightness.

The dominant triad remains as in the major, and the leading-note still desires to rise, and the supertonic to fall.

The subdominant triad contains the flattened sixth degree, being F, A flat, C. The subdominant F retains its character of dulness and its desire to fall. Comparing the minor sixth with the major sixth, we find that the desire to fall to the fifth is greatly intensified in the minor sixth—



This imperative tendency of the flattened sixth to fall is borne out in every chord in the minor mode which contains that note—



In No. 14, a, b, c, d, we find this true, nor is it difficult to account for it, since in the majority of cases the flattened sixth degree may be traced to its derivation from the dominant root, from which it is the minor sixth. Hence its strong feeling of a desire to fall in resolution.

64. The Teachings of Harmony as a Basis for Training.

But these other notes remain to complete the chromatic scale of harmony—*viz.*, D flat, F sharp, and B flat. Of these the flattened seventh is easily recognized by the ear, since it builds with the tonic a minor seventh, desiring to fall, and so affording a strong contrast to the major seventh, which desires to rise.

The augmented fourth (F sharp) is seized on by the ear as being the leading-note to the key of the dominant, and thus, in its desire to rise, it contrasts itself with the diatonic fourth degree, which, with its dull effect, desires to fall.

Lastly, the flattened second degree (D flat), which harmony shows us is so often used as part of the Neapolitan sixth (as shown in No. 14, d), desires, though in a more intensified manner than did the second degree, to fall to the tonic.

We have now, by the teachings of harmony, been able to formulate a method by which our young pupils can tell on any degree of the chromatic scale which we may strike, always provided the tonic is first given.

Since the method is based entirely on the relationship of each note to its tonic, the pupil will, when once the plan has been mastered, be able as easily to work in one major key as in another.

(Illustration in the notes of the chromatic scale by Miss Blakiston.)

We are of course to-day only dealing with the very elementary work of ear training, and therefore, in conclusion, I shall very briefly show how the elements of harmony enable the pupil to tell intervals. These we will divide into two classes: those of which the tonic is the lower note, and secondly, those intervals in which it is not the lower note.

In preface to this portion of the work we may well remember that if it was true that the ear supplied harmonies of a single nature to the single notes of every melodic passage, it is doubly true that the ear receives every simultaneous sounding of two notes—*viz.*, every interval, as part of a chord. Therefore, if harmony has proved to be a basis of recognition by the ear of single notes, far more so will it be in the detection of intervals.

In the majority of cases the old mental effects which we found pertaining to the notes as scale degrees will be found still existing in intervals; but it must also be noticed that some intervals have in themselves so strongly a special harmonic effect that the melodic effect is overridden. Thus any minor seventh, as a part of a chord, has so marked a harmonic effect in the desire of the upper note to resolve downwards, that it will overcome the melodic effect of the upper note. Thus, seconds, sevenths, and perfect fifths also have harmonic tendencies, which supersede the melodic tendencies of the various notes of which they consist. It will

be found, however, that in the majority of intervals this is not the case, and the old mental effects of the scale degrees will remain, and be of the greatest use in the determination of the interval.

Thus the perfect fifth between tonic and dominant is at once recognized by the bright mental effect of the fifth degree (No. 15, a)—



The major third (No. 15, b) still sounds calm and peaceful—in fact, I leave it to you to decide whether the third degree makes the interval calm, or whether the interval of the major third makes the degree calm! The minor third (No. 15, c) is sad and melancholy. The perfect fourth essentially desires the resolution of that fourth as to the third degree (No. 15, d). The major sixth (No. 15, e) desires to fall to the dominant, the minor sixth (No. 15, f) imperatively demanding to do the same thing. Even in the interval of the major seventh (No. 15, g), the tendency of the leading-note to succeed is not completely overcome, but the ear seems to grasp the seventh degree as a retardation of the tonic.



Of the other intervals from the tonic, the influence of harmony will be more directly apparent. Thus in the minor second (No. 16, a) the ear demands the resolution of the lower note a whole tone downwards to resolve it on a consonance—the minor third. In the major second (No. 16, b) the lower note has a tendency to fall a semitone, and is less dissonant in its discordancy than was the minor second. The augmented fourth (No. 16, c) the ear seems on as creating a modulation to the dominant, and it recognizes the interval because of the desire of the two notes to waver away from each other by a degree. Lastly, in the minor seventh (No. 16, d) the teaching of harmony and the desire of the ear for resolution agree, and the interval is known by the tendency of the upper note to descend and of the lower note to rise a fourth.

(Illustrations by Miss Blakiston.)

We have treated of the class of intervals arising between the tonic and the various notes of the harmonic diatonic scale. This scale, which ascends by fifths with the solitary

exception of the sharpened fourth degree, is, as Sir Hubert Parry says in *Greve's Dictionary*, "obviously the most constant," since it was "such accidentals as can occur in chromatic chords without changing the key in which the passage occurs." It is very interesting to note that the ear, that inflexible judge in all matters musical, fully endorses this; for it is in this way that each of the degrees of the chromatic scale will appeal to the ear. Thus C—E flat struck alone will never sound to the ear as C—D sharp; nor will C, F sharp sound as C, G flat and the upper note desire to descend instead of ascend.

I must not trespass on your time in dealing fully with intervals of which the tonic is not the key-note. Briefly let me point out that in those, as was the case in the other class, frequently the mental effects of the scale degrees will still remain. This is the case in all intervals derived from the primary triads, as No. 17 will show:—

No. 17



In all these cases the ear can trace the notes of the intervals by their individual peculiarities. In other cases, the power of the harmonic effect of the interval will partially, if not entirely, override the more simple melodic effect of the scale degree. Thus, in No. 18—



each of the intervals has its own harmonic effect; but on hearing the tonic first the ear of the pupil will readily grasp some fact that will aid it, and thus by systematic practice every interval struck will be readily named. Further than this I must not go to night.

What has been the object of our researches? To try and evolve from the harmony which is constantly surrounding our little patients and victims some few salient facts—"generalisations," if you like to name them so—which can aid the young ear to analyse the sounds it is hearing. Thus, by utilizing the brain, as well as the ear, a far more intelligent pupil will be produced, the acuteness of perception will be greatly advanced, because the pupil will not only interpret symbols into sounds, but also—the great rule is also—will learn how to interpret sounds into symbols.

The quick and ready way in which any well-trained schoolboard boy will name in his sol-fa the sounds sung

to him must put many of us still musicians to the blush. It need not do so, if we will take the matter up, and with our greater and more adequate knowledge of music will try to teach it on a rational plan. It is perfectly easy to do; in our desire to advance our pupils' musicianship it is demanded of us that we teach it them. Therefore, if in the very near future the great subject of ear training is not considered a *sine qua non* for every young beginner when learning the rudiments, and for every student of harmony from the time he learns the *primary triads*, we have not done our duty to the great art of music which we profess to love and desire to serve.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—I am sure we are all much indebted to Dr. Sawyer for the very instructive lecture he has given us. He manages to get a great deal in a small compass, and I am sure you will all look forward to seeing this paper in print. I have always considered this subject as of supreme importance. I have had a great deal to do with it in the course of my life. For some thirty years ear training has been part of the musical work for every schoolmaster in the training college, and it is an essential feature of the Education Code under which some four or five millions of children have been pilled with ear exercises throughout the country. Dr. Sawyer alluded to instrumentalists rather than singers at large, and there undoubtedly he is right. The subject has been woefully neglected in these quarters. It looks far now, I think, to be taken up, and with such teachers as Dr. Sawyer and Dr. Stone about, I hope a great reform will be accomplished. The supreme question in relation to your exercises always will be how to arrange the order of teaching. Many efforts have been made during the last century to devise plans of ear training. Some of them go upon an apparently high logical basis, but are really governed entirely by the form of the notation which is used; and so you may pick up a book on ear training in which everything seems to be arranged admirably, and yet the method fails miserably when it is applied to the average pupil. That is because it has been governed more by the form of the notation than by what I may call the psychological treatment of the subject. There is really no rational way of approaching ear training, except by finding how the average pupil works, and the average pupil, I am sure, does not work by absolute pitch. Dr. Sawyer has told you so, and with his great experience

and that of many others before us, we must conclude that we cannot base methods on the assumption that ordinary pupils can gain the sense of absolute pitch. There are two other courses open to us. We may observe the interval as perfect fifth, perfect fourth, major third, &c., without regard to the tonic. As every piece of music may be said to present a sort of intervals, this method may seem feasible. The perfect fourth certainly has a definite, somewhat ghostly effect; the perfect fifth is comparatively bright, the major third is sweet, and so on. That was the plan adopted by some teachers. It is not possible now to give anything like a history of the subject. I am sorry Dr. Sawyer did not notice Ritter's Musical Dictionary, which was published in Novello's Music Primers in 1857. It represents an honest and hard-working effort to bring the subject before the British musical public. But I am afraid that the public was not then in the mood to receive it. Unfortunately, Ritter bases his plan too much on the observation of intervals. He begins by asking the pupil to toll major seconds, minor seconds, and so on, and it looks very logical to take gradually longer and larger intervals till you get to the octave. But though I think the book deserves attention for many things in it, I must say I do not like the principle on which it is based. You can observe intervals, I think, pretty well and can teach pupils to observe them when they are struck together; but it is much more difficult to take them in melody. Many, I think, hear the mental effect of the scale degree and afterwards translate it into terms of intervals. When C and E are struck together the memory is not called upon for the purpose of the comparison. It hears them both at once, just as when you see those two books together you have a clear idea of their relative size; but if I showed you one and a little while afterwards the other, it would not be so easy to decide. I noticed that the young lady you have just heard first had the notes played as scale degrees and then she named the intervals—major seventh, &c. But the main reason why melodic intervals are found difficult to recognize directly is that scale degree effect engages the mind and draws attention from specific interval effect. The third plan is to try to awaken this sense of tonic relationship. That is the only plan that you can assume as possible on the part of the average pupil; and that, I am glad to see, is the plan which Dr. Sawyer has adopted and Dr. Shinn also, I believe, agrees. All music courses, no matter what their object, should include ear-training. If it is necessary for the training of children in elementary schools, it is necessary for our parochial pupils. I am sure we shall be very glad to hear other speakers; but, before I sit down, I should like to have the pleasure of proposing a very hearty vote of thanks to Dr. Sawyer.

Perhaps Dr. Shinn will second that, and take the opportunity of letting us know what he thinks on the matter.

Dr. Shinn.—I think I should be particularly ungrateful, both to Dr. Sawyer and to yourself, if I did not rise to thank you for your generous references to me. It was Sir Walter Parratt who first introduced the subject of ear training to me, and my book on musical memory is dedicated to him as a slight recognition of what he did for me in this direction. His classes at the Royal College of Music are largely devoted to musical dictation exercises. With regard to Dr. Sawyer's method, I may say that very largely it is my own—at least, so far as regards the treatment of the tonic as the basis. At the same time I do not agree with everything he said. I am afraid there is not time to do justice to the paper in this respect, because we could very well go on discussing it all night. With reference to the tendency of the supertonic to fall, we find this note many times where it is not the last note but one of a melody and in such cases it does not suggest falling to the tonic; and I do not think the effect of the supertonic is necessarily to suggest a fall to the tonic as Dr. Sawyer seemed to think. Thus in Example 5, a, he played only those two chords. I do not admit that the progression is in the key of C as it stands. The same holds with respect to 5, b. I do not mean to say that if he had played the chord of C the effect would not have been as he represented it; but suppose he put the chord of C first, and then took the B down to A, I do not think it would be an unnatural progression. Even if you begin with the chord of C and then harmonise the leading-note with the dominant chord and take it down to A, I do not think it is at all unnatural. You speak of how we may base our teaching on more than one principle. If I might venture to speak on the subject, I think it is largely a matter of mental development. The historical development of music has been the gradual gaining of control by the human mind over the sensations of sound. The human mind developing through sensitive has continually endeavored to discover fresh combinations of sound, and as these new combinations came to the race, so, to a very large extent, they must come to the individual mind. The study of ear training is a vital part of the study of harmony. To make harmony the basis of ear training is somewhat analogous to taking grammar as the basis for the study of the meaning of words. You do not go to grammar to explain the meaning of a word; and I do not think you ought to go to harmony to explain the sound of a chord. Unless you take ear training as the basis of harmony, harmony is a non-critical subject. The two first examples strike me as illustrations of the influence of

environment. Dr. Sawyer said *A*, is more readily grasped than *B*. That is because we hear it very much oftener. It has occurred in music so frequently that the human mind and ear have got to the condition of accepting *A* more readily than *B*. If Spencer's theory of heredity is right—and many men of science believe in Spencer—the human mind through generations has been familiarised with particular combinations and progressions, and we have inherited a tendency to accept what our ancestors accepted more readily than what is novel and unfamiliar. I think that is the foundation of the whole thing. It seems going a long way off, but I believe that is really at the bottom of the subject. Harmony must be taught as we teach ear training. You must introduce your chords to the ear first of all and then you introduce them on paper. We owe a great deal to soldiers for what they have done, and I say this the more readily because I am not a soldier. Dr. Sawyer spoke about the chromatic scale, and said we would never think of C—E flat as C—D sharp. I think that is a matter which will depend on the influence of our environment upon us. With regard to C going to F sharp, I should not agree with him. I do not think we hear an augmented fourth more often than a diminished fifth. With regard to G sharp, I admit that an augmented fifth is a rarer interval than a minor sixth. The whole basis of the question is what one's mind is used to listen to and what is familiar to one. In recording this vote of thanks I am sure that we all feel that we owe a great debt of gratitude to Dr. Sawyer. The paper is not one to be discussed at a moment's notice, but it is a paper we should all read carefully and from which we should learn something. With regard to this subject of ear-training, we seem to be passing through the second of those three stages mentioned by Herbert Spencer. A few years ago we were unknown in our ignorance; our present stage represents the differences of opinion of the inquiring, and many are coming forward to tell us what they think best. This is the third stage we come to the unanimity of the wise. I hope we shall some day reach that happy condition.

The vote of thanks was then passed unanimously.

Mr. W. HARRIS, Boston.—One thing occurred to me while these illustrations were being given, and that is that two chords do not always mark a key. For instance, I heard No. 6 as clearly in the key of F. I think Dr. Sawyer should have played more chords in order to establish the key. I should always play five or six chords so that the pupil might have the key well established. The ambiguity is often heard in Tallis's Responses and similar passages in the Church services. I think Dr. Sawyer's plan is the right

one. We must begin with the very easy things. One of the critics, in reviewing Dr. Sawyer's new book, says that he thinks he goes too far in the subject of the mental effect of notes. Of course these things should be learnt in childhood, and if you commence at the beginning of musical knowledge you will find children will learn most easily from the scale effect. After they have thoroughly imbibed the mental effect of scale notes they can then go on to more difficult things; and there, I think, the study of interval comes in. The effect of chords depends very largely on the intervals contained in them; and in teaching chords it is always well to analyze those intervals. The different inversions have totally different effects, largely because of the different intervals introduced. The effect of interval is a strong point which we must not omit; but it is not wise to commence with it. Certainly the mental effect of the scale is the best way of training the ear at first. The question of the minor key we had better not go into. But the intervals of the minor scale certainly have a very different effect from those of the major. The effect of an interval, I agree, is not so obvious, because this effect of scale tone governs everything. This study is a most interesting one, and if care is taken in teaching children at the beginning, we find they can do a great deal more than we should expect from them. But later in life very little can be done, as a rule, unless pupils are gifted musically.

Dr. Sawyer — I will not take more than a minute, because I think we have far too much encroached on the time of Mr. Ross, whom we are all looking forward to hearing. It is curious how we all look at the world from our own point of view. I looked at it from the point of view of staff teachers, which is the real musical world. Outside there is a small world who learn tonic sol-fa and know a little about the staff. Well, now, considering that not, perhaps, more than four or five per cent. of those children would ever learn the staff, the influence of that teaching is entirely lost when they leave the Board schools, whereas these children whom I have in view are all, or nearly all, familiar with the staff already. I entirely agree with Dr. McNaught about intervals. But it is most interesting to note what a different mental effect the same pair of notes have in different combinations. Second B flat—G alone. They probably suggest the minor chord of G. Now add E flat below. You have the major chord of E flat. Or, instead, we may add C. The combination appears to be a dominant seventh in F. Or add A. It now appears as a dominant sixth in D. The effect of the two upper notes is wholly different in each case. I think the experiments I have made with pupils who have learnt that way is that they soon get very hopeless. With regard to the

superiority, Dr. Stern must bear in mind that we should take the simplest possible progression. I have used that basis now for the last ten years, and have never known it to fail at all in appealing to the ear of an instrumentalist. The good of the padding is in the ending. That is the point we want to get at. With regard to the teaching of harmony, that, of course, is the way in which I have applied it. I do not, of course, mean to say that these tendencies are always apparent. I have simply tried to evolve from the simplest passages that which will be of help to our little pupils. You noticed, time after time, that the students whom I questioned instead of telling what I wanted gave the name of the scale degree. I think the classes that are carried on at the Royal Academy of Music and the Royal College of Music, though they are taught by very able men, are not taught on the right system. The teachers have both of them a fine sense of absolute pitch, and they are not able to realize the difficulties that their pupils experience. I should, of course, have taken care to establish the key properly if I had had time, but I was obliged to give it you out and dried. No. 5 would, of course, strike you as in E minor, if you were not previously led to C major; but that is a condition you were not intended to assume. I am very much obliged to you, because not a word seems to have been found fault with in the deductions that I have tried to make from harmony.

W. G. McNAUGHT, Esq., Mus. Doc.,
IN THE CHAIR.

THE BALALAIKA.

By ALGERNON ROSE, F.R.C.S.

It may seem impossible, in these times of musical progress and evolution, that a family of instruments possessing unusual musical attributes should be in vogue in a large portion of Europe and yet be unknown to musicians generally. Nevertheless, such is the fact. Outside Russia the peculiar charm of the balalaika (pronounced bil-a-*la*-ka) is unknown. In our standard works on orchestration it is not mentioned, although its claims for association with the modern orchestra for special effects are as great as those of the mandolin, guitar, saxophone, sarrasophone, or ophicleide.

The recollection that certain very interesting and curious papers on Russian opera and Russian church music have been read before this Association fills me with much chagrin when I venture to draw attention to an instrument which has hitherto been identified with the soul of Russia. Yet, when it is remembered that the Russian peasant uses musical as the poorest Irish paper, that this instrument during many generations has been almost his only artificial means for giving musical expression to his thoughts, and that the balalaika is ubiquitous throughout the Russian Empire, the importance of the instrument may not only be conceded by liberal thinkers, but the musician may even regard it with reverence.

Having alluded to the Irish pipes, another typically national instrument occurs to me. The Irish hard harp might still be pleasantly cultivated in our sister isle. It has, however, sunk into irretrievable oblivion. Its musical value is consequently dead. The balalaika is, however, a living reality. It may therefore be regarded as a factor of immense value for conserving and revealing those peculiarities of musical thought—of phrasing, accentuation, and distinctive melody—of a great people, as yet unyoked to the musical laws accepted by the rest of Europe.

In July last I had an opportunity of hearing the balalaika in St. Petersburg. The best performances were those given by the Capella organised by Mr. Herman Rode, of Moscow. His son, Mr. Ilya Rode, a clever violinist, is leader of this Capella. Ilya's four sisters—Wera, Sofia, Ekaterina, and Irina—took part, being all musicians of remarkable talent, although two of them were very young. Four other good players, not members of the Rode family, completed the band. Peopple of Russia are constituted the main part

of the programme. This was listened to attentively and with manifest pleasure and understanding by a large and enthusiastic audience.

As a solo instrument the balalaika has little value; but in ensemble playing it excels. I learnt that the chief of all balalaika players in Russia is Androff, of St. Petersburg. At the time of my visit he was away at Paris, having been engaged to play at the Exhibition. To him credit is due for having, firstly, increased the resources of his instrument, and, secondly, for having promoted excellence in ensemble rather than in solo playing. Since he has done this, the popularity of the balalaika in Russia has increased by leaps and bounds. The instrument has, in fact, become fashionable: it is whispered that the Czarina herself delights in it. Even as the Scot will always love his pipes, so the Russian has always loved his balalaika. Away to the east, as far as Vladivostock, the balalaika is to be found. In the north its tone softens the peasant during the long, solitary, and dreary winter. At the bars at night it is to be heard incessantly, and from any convivial vodka party or wedding feast the balalaika would, indeed, be sorely missed. Thus, the instrument has long been cultivated by the lower classes, but only in recent years has it been affected by ladies of fashion, who often now play the balalaika to their friends at an evening. Professional players are seldom engaged to teach the instrument. It is mostly learnt by ear, with the help of a primer for self-instruction, such as E. Dekker-Schenk's *Tutor for the Balalaika*. As such publications are only printed in Russian, they are of little use to musicians unacquainted with that language.

Let me repeat that, by itself, a single balalaika is not heard to advantage. One should listen to the performance of a good band of these instruments, where the playing is properly harmonised, to gain the best impression. In Russia such an opportunity is not difficult to find. Nearly all schools, factories, clubs and naval corps possess such bands, and soldier-musicians are now required to play the balalaika for their officers' mess or regimental dances. No firework *fité* in Russia is complete without some balalaika music, and at the dinner parties of wealthy Russians a balalaika band is usually engaged to play during the feast. It may here be mentioned that *Randana* mostly get married in the evening. Church service is at eight; dinner follows at midnight, accompanied by balalaika music; the bride and bridegroom and their friends afterwards dance till five or six o'clock in the morning, prior to the couple going to their new home, a honeymoon tour in Russia being unusual.

The effect produced by a full choir of balalaiki is as difficult to describe in words as would be the effect of a new shade of

colour. There is something of the masculine quality about the tone, although the balalaika sounds softer and more seductive. Again, the sound might be likened to that which would result from a large silver-tuned Russian harpsichord, for, in the balalaika, the harpsichord "crash" is new and again emphatic. On two occasions when I heard the Kado Capella the players showed wonderful dexterity, precision, and control over their various instruments. Playing well in tune, they produced beautiful passages and exquisite effects, whilst they gave out, when desired, an astonishing forte.

It is a truism to say that a musical genius can make any musical instrument sound musical. Conversely, an unmusical man can cause the best musical instrument to displease the ear. In ordinary hands, the balalaika—like the violin—is by no means remarkable. In the hands of an artist it is wonderful. If there be any secret in obtaining the best effects in balalaika playing, it is due to the artist's "style," or that subtle power of changing rhythm and unconsciously producing contrasting shades of piano, forte, fortissimo, crescendo and decrescendo sound, which defies analysis and cannot be taught any more than can be a beautiful literary style. With the band in question—under the leadership of a gifted player, their capacity for expression, unity of attack, and correctness of rendering (they played Hungarian music, without book), crossed an ensemble which was evidence in itself that constant and patient rehearsal had been gone through for a lengthy period before a public performance had been given, or the criticism of an exacting audience had been challenged. The nine instruments constituting the complete balalaika family were as follows:—

Two piccolos, tuned to mi, la, mi—

One primo, tuned to mi, la, la—

Two secondos, tuned to mi, la, mi—

One alto, tuned to mi, la, mi—

Two basses, tuned to mi, la, m—

One contra-basso, tuned to mi, la, mi—

The measurements of the Primo balalaika were as follows:—
 From nut on finger-board to bridge, $17\frac{1}{2}$ inches; length of
 finger-board, 17 inches; lower portion of sound-hole, 14 inches;
 from nut to tail, $20\frac{1}{2}$ inches; length of head, 3 inches; back of
 neck to back bottom, 11 inches; corner to corner of bottom
 side, $24\frac{1}{2}$ inches; corner to corner of side faces, $12\frac{1}{2}$ inches, and
 width at bottom of finger-board, $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

A balalaika player is seldom happy unless he plays on his
 own instrument, because the instruments in no two bands
 are tuned systematically alike. In tuning, every leader
 seems to suit his own fancy in regard to which notes are to
 be open or not. The foregoing intervals, therefore, preferred
 by the Koda Capelle, must not be taken as the system
 on which all other bands are tuned. The pitch, of course,
 is the usual diapason normal, although this is raised or
 lowered for special effects.

It should be noted that only the principal player in such
 a band uses a mandoline plectrum, so as to make his
 part specially prominent when necessary. The bass
 and contra bass performers play in pizzicato fashion with
 the right thumb, resting the other fingers on the belly of the
 instrument. All the other performers twang the strings
 with the first finger of the right hand, keeping up a rapid
 vibrato, the other fingers not touching the instrument. In
 learning, the beginner plays slowly or his hand will become
 heavy. The art is to make the right hand very light, for
 one note is usually repeated from eight to twelve times.
 In fact, the tremolo is done as quickly as possible. It
 seldom, in learning, to repeat each note eight times,
 each crotchet four times, and a quarter twice. Thus,
 notation for the balalaika is played:—

The image shows two musical staves. The top staff is labeled 'Written' and contains a single note with a stem and a flag, indicating a sixteenth note. The bottom staff is labeled 'Played' and shows a sequence of notes with stems and flags, representing a tremolo effect. The notes are grouped together, and the stems are connected by a horizontal line, indicating rapid repetition. The notation is in a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a 2/4 time signature.

For pizzicato playing, the hand is closed. One finger
 after another produces a better tone than if the same
 finger is always used. Appoggiatura are given pizzicato
 with the thumb of the left hand, whilst the other fingers
 press the finger-board to produce the notes. When a
 glissando is played, the appoggiatura are sounded with the
 right hand.

Fuzerbaiki, late of Moscow and now of St. Petersburg,
 is reputed to be the best balalaika maker. For the Koda

Capella he made one piccolo, one prima, and the alto instrument. Altman, of St. Petersburg, made the other piccolo. Franckoff, of St. Petersburg, and Alexandroff, of Moscow, manufactured the two basses and the great contra-bass.

The best balalaika cost about £10, or 100 roubles each. Mr. Bode's contra-bass came to 60 roubles.

Being too poor to buy an instrument, the Russian peasant makes his own balalaika. Rough though the instrument may be, the rough often gets marvellous music out of it. The wood used is the Russian spruce fir, of which there is plenty to be had. Fine instruments, however, are often made of other woods. A superior one I saw had a bird's-eye-maple belly and a mahogany neck, the head being beautifully carved to a design of two sea-horses facing each other.

In the best balalaika the belly is as thin as cartridge paper. A surface of black varnish is often placed over the belly below the neck, where the player's finger thumps the strings, to prevent the wood being worn through or scratched. The sound-hole is characteristic. It is much smaller than that of the mandoline or guitar, being only 5 ins. in diameter. An exception to this is in a balalaika which belongs to A. J. Hopkins, Esq., F.S.A. It has an ornamented sound-hole as big as a five-stringing piece. The absence of any frets on the finger-board of Mr. Hopkins's instrument shows that it was unfinished, and it is possible that the maker intended to fit in this large aperture with a perforated disc. This balalaika is illustrated in Mr. Hopkins's monumental work, "*Musical Instruments, Rare, Historic, and Unique.*" Much ingenuity is exercised in the decorations of the sound-holes of the balalaika. These are sometimes rimmed with Polish silver. A favourite device is to make the mahogany, ebony, and mother-of-pearl inlay resemble a Russian chalet, the window of which is perforated. In "*Lavigne*" (p. 334), an excellent illustration of such a sound-hole is given. Another form is to constitute the sound-hole of an inlaid disc, containing five or six perforations. Makers of the balalaika are more modest than those of the violin, for, if the manufacturer has placed a label inside bearing his name, it is only visible when the instrument is taken to pieces—a by no means easy matter.

The head of the balalaika is guitar shaped. As already mentioned, it is occasionally well carved.

There are only three tuning pegs—similar in shape to those in the violin. These are usually of ivory. A few balalaika, however, have six pegs, each string being doubled to increase the tremolo effect. In the unusually contra-bass balalaika, an iron rod, or peg, projects from the right hand corner,

so that the player, like a cellist, may get a firm hold from the ground.

The neck is usually of pine, being fixed into the body of the instrument with a small block like a mandoline. On the face of the neck is the ebony finger-board. This is fretted with thick silver wire, and the ebony nut stands well up from the finger-board. According to the register of the instrument, so does the number of the frets vary. It should be understood that the rough balalaika, made and used by the peasants, has only three frets, and these are merely pieces of string bound tightly round the neck. In the article on "Frets," in Grove, the balalaika is referred to as having "coloured lines that serve for frets." Musicians in St. Petersburg have seen no such instruments. The ordinary bought instrument has five frets. These are intended to produce only eight notes. Andrié claims to have invented the chromatic balalaika with sixteen frets. With these, all the chromatic intervals within two octaves can be sounded. Indicated in the finger-board—instead of at the side of the neck as in the guitar—are four small discs of pearl to indicate the positions. These are between the second, fourth, sixth, and eleventh frets.

In the little, or piccolo, balalaika, the number of frets is twenty-one, Paganini adding five additional frets like finger lines below the neck on the belly. In the simple or old balalaika the drone strings are merely used as drones, whereas, in the chromatic balalaika, they are used for chords. Thus, the simple balalaika is seldom played in more than one key—A major or minor—but the chromatic instrument is played in all keys. Compared with the twenty-one frets of the piccolo, the great contra-bass balalaika has but fourteen.

In shape the back is not rounded like a gourd as in the mandoline. It may be described as hemispherical. Seven pieces of plain maple are glued together in a mould or matrix, in the same way that a mandoline is made. These pieces form at the base a rough quarter cone which narrows as it tapers upwards towards the neck. The best, as well as the home-made balalaikas, have sometimes flat backs. With well-made instruments, nevertheless, the usual custom is to flute and purple the back. Although usually of maple, the back is sometimes of mahogany. The enterprising German, being desirous of competing in this growing Russian industry, has imported a number of cheap balalaikas with fluted backs from Markenskirchen. The upper edges of the side-boards which the belly is inserted—are inlaid with ebony lining instead of violin purfling. Observe the odd number of the strings and the odd number of the pieces of the back—analagous to the strings of the lyre. In "Musical Instruments and their Homes" (M. and W. Brown, New

York), two balalaikas are mentioned, one possessing three strings and the other four. The first is described "Balalaika (187)—Rude specimen unvarnished, 3 strings, used by Russian peasants. Length 27 ins., greatest width 8 ins." The second is detailed "Balalaika (188), a rude guitar with 4 outer strings. The body of triangular shape, the back rounded. The face of white wood, the back painted red, and the handle (188) black. Used by the Cossacks. Length 26½ ins. Greatest width 10½ ins., depth 4 ins." No frets are shown in either instrument, but, as the illustrations are facsimiles of had finished pen drawings, they cannot be called on.

Underneath the bridge in the typical instrument, where the back is most expanded, the latter is jointed to a flat bottom-piece, which rests on the right arm of the player, and meets the belly of the instrument at an acute angle. Its roughly made back (the heptagonal) back is secured to the bottom-piece by means of wooden pegs. This bottom, which connects the back and belly, consists of stout 4-inch maple to carry the steel strings on the instrument. Into the bottom three red-pine are placed. These are ordinary guitar pins, and pass through a 1½-inch block 2 inches wide by 4-inch thick.

As already noted, there are only three strings in the normal balalaika. The first, or melody string, is usually of silver. In cheap instruments it is of steel, similar to the mandoline E string. Gut is the substance of the two others, which are generally tuned in unison a fifth below. They serve the purpose of a reverberating drone. It should be noted that the two gut strings are in unison, but that they are cuffed in gauge, the first being of the violin E size and the second of the A thickness. In the Capella of instruments named, the material of the strings was as follows:—The leader's psalms had three steel strings, sometimes doubled and tuned in pairs as in (the old cittern!) he alone used the psalms. One steel string and two of gut were on the other psalms, pipes and second instruments. The alto and one basso had each two gut and one copper string, the other bass having three overtop silver strings like the contra-basso.

An extraordinary feature of the Russian balalaika is undoubtedly its shape, because (if we except the fiddle variety) it is the only known musical instrument of which the outline of the body is triangular. With its small sound-hole it suggests a triangular dulcimer, or psaltery, finished with a sack. Whence, I would ask, did this singularly shaped instrument come? Many theories might be propounded. It is possible that the triangle or pyramid shape was suggested by the pagan sign of fire, and that the sound-hole represents the eye which is seen in such symbols. May be, the shape was, after all, merely adopted for the sake of convenience.

In the sketch I give, showing a peasant playing the instrument, the performer is supporting the bottom-piece on the upper part of his right arm. And here it may be noted that the lower face of the balalaika is almost level. At first sight it appears flat and is therefore not a "belly" in the strict sense. Carefully examined, however, it is seen to be slightly



convex, after the style of the sitara. It is, in fact, part of a true sound-board, because the player who does not curve his instrument and thereby impede the vibration, holds it, during manipulation, well away from him so as to take advantage of all possible resonance. The belly usually consists of four strips of Russian silver fir taken from the centre of the tree.

Instead of being laid over the sides of the instrument as in the viola, it is bolted round and let into the sides. On the belly, the bridge is like that of the old English mandoline—i. e., of bass-pattern—with two feet. Inside there is no sound-post, but the belly is supported by three bars or ribs, like a guitar. The first bar is below the bridge, the second above it, and the third is just beneath the second hole and can be felt on insertion of the little finger through the hole.

A stranger in Russia, on seeing a balalaika for the first time, naturally concludes that its derivation was from the East. But the Russian warmly contends that its origin was not Tartar. Nevertheless, Opřiva says that the balalaika is "A musical instrument of very ancient Slavonic origin, common amongst the Russians and Tatars, and, according to Niebuhr, also in Egypt and Arabia. It is of the guitar kind but has only two strings, of which one only is used to produce the *ut*, the other giving a monotonous bass." Tscheltz's Russian dictionary defines "balalaika" as three stringed lute, whereas in the article on the "Lute," in Grove, the Russian *Kobza* is classed as a lute, but the balalaika as a guitar. Engel gives an interesting illustration of the *Kobza* (p. 203). In regard to the etymology, Tscheltz translates "balalaika" as a balloon, coming from the verb "balachat," "to put, to play the balloon," and "balachant" means to gossip, chat, talk. Alexandrow's dictionary gives the following kindred words: "Balagan," a merry-andrew; "Balachodka," the diminutive of balalaika; "balaganochek," a showman or booth-holder, the root being "balavan," to play the fool. Obviously, then, the Russian is derived from the Latin *balneo*, a bath, or rather, *balneo*, and the Latin word came from the Greek *βάλλω*—a jumping about, dancing. Thus it is evident that the balalaika was the chosen instrument of the Russian peasant. Its triangular shape suggests its coracal hat. On the balalaika, therefore, merry tunes rather than deeps were played. Carl Engel says: "The majority of the various tribes of the Caucasus have bards, called *Bilalokas*, who recite in verse old stories, fairy tales, and occasionally extemporize poetry, accompanying their vocal effusions with a three-stringed kind of guitar, called balalaika."

In regard to culture, the balalaika's nearest European relative is, perhaps, the Quinterna. Now, Mr. Blackley has demonstrated that the shape of a musical instrument has more to do with its tone than has its substance. Nevertheless, substance also affects tone. Undoubtedly the three corners or points of the balalaika cause an accidental peculiarity in the timbre of this instrument, in contradistinction to the full and mellow tone produced by the curves of the viola. It would be unfair to compare the "balloon"-shaped *Pipa* of China, or the square bodied *Sansha* of Japan, with

the triangular balalaika, because not only the proportions of these three instruments, but the materials of them, differ essentially from one another—the wood of the Chinese instrument being very thick and heavy and the Japanese having only a thin belly of willow. For the same reason—thickness or heaviness of substance—the ponderous, but small-bodied, pear-shaped Chinese guitar, entirely lacks the power of the pear-shaped Spanish guitar, the thickness of the body of which is reduced to a minimum.

Whatever a stranger may think of the preference of the triangular balalaika, the Russian considers its form perfectly beautiful. Parallely with musical instruments begins love for their appearance, however bizarre—like the top-tailed grand piano—ornamental artists may at first sight consider them to be.

During the four and a half years which the Koda Capelle has been before the Russian public, it has appeared with unvarying success in Moscow, St. Petersburg, Odessa, Kiev, Cracow, Warsaw, and other places. Adaptations of operas, arrangements of Liszt's rhapsodies, &c., are included in the programmes, the chief items of which are some twenty pot-pourris of Russian air.

Such Russian melodies as "The Night" are much beloved, and certain tunes by Gluka, Tschikowsko, Wertoffo, Lyoff, and other well-known native musicians are popular. The glorious folk melodies of Russia come mostly from the Volga district, between Moscow and Nijni Novgorod. When Russian dances are played, the balalaika renders the music with a peculiar *flair*, *bit*, and *accent*. The Kasatook and Karamusko are danced by the man, and the Haroved is a village dance in which all join, crossing hands, and stepping at the same time. As the music changes, the players often appear to get excited, as they smile and laugh towards each other. The fun really begins when one player puts down his instrument and dances wildly, thrusting out the feet alternately in a squatting position, extending his arms, and whirling around like a mad dervish. Another player joins, and then another, while the onlookers mark the rhythm by clapping their hands.

That the balalaika is as much a vehicle of sentiment as it is a stimulus to terpsichorean excitement, the following incident may show. An Englishman I met, who had come by the overland route from Vladivostok to Moscow, informed me that under certain circumstances the instrument can become hateful. In the train between Sirotsk and Irkutsk, a young man was making love to a girl by playing the balalaika to her. This went on all day long—morning, noon, and night—for several days! Yet—the maid

The balalaika is as much the national musical instrument of Russia as the Shamisen is of Japan. To show how it is cultivated by all classes, I may mention that General Kutepoff, master of the Imperial Hussar, at Peterhof, has lately formed a balalaika capella of young hussars, who are instructed by Mr. Hoff Rodé.

Apart from the balalaika, two other curious Russian instruments may be noted. The *Sawfika* is used by the basket makers. It is a flute, 8-bore made from the pear tree. Then there is the ubiquitous *Sajak*, a species of small Russian accordion heard everywhere. An article, entitled "Die Industrie der Musikinstrumente in Russland," published in the *Zeitschrift für Instrumentalbau* (Paul de Wit, Leipzig) from Comstock Reports, says that "in 1897, 48,890 such accordions were made in Russia at a value of 137,000 roubles, and that the other Russian folk instruments which now enjoy great favour in the highest circles is the balalaika. In certain districts an industry has developed in the manufacture of these instruments giving employment to a very large number of workers, but the labour is badly paid. It is only recently that these large factories have been established." The *Sajak* is often played most cleverly and humorously by the *Moskita*, who delight in patter songs. One man I heard was exceedingly funny; he had the voice of a Henschel, the gestures of a Grossmith, with the pedal delicacy of a Pease.

If I have demonstrated that the Russian people in their national instrument is justified my object is fulfilled. From a musical standpoint the balalaika is, assuredly, worthy of attention, because it has a peculiar tone-colour of its own, because it is as complete a family as is the violin tribe, and because a skilled player of such instruments is capable of expressing a high degree of musical poetry. Possibly, the balalaika has already been associated with the orchestra in Russian opera. It is not for the writer to suggest in what way the cultivation and appreciation of such an instrument may be furthered. To a music-lover living outside Russia the singularity of shape and peculiarity of the tone of the balalaika render it as interesting as is a rare species of bird to an ornithologist. The instrument has impressed me in that manner.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—This is a paper which may not invite general discussion, but there may be some here who may have something to say on it and we shall be very glad to hear them.

Mrs. NEWSMAKER.—Mr. Chairman, it is getting so late that I feel hardly justified in detaining you by any remarks of mine. Mr. Ross has not said anything about the antiquity of the balalaika. It is not a very old instrument. It existed in its oldest form as the *dobsha*, a sort of guitar, the strings of which were vibrated by the fingers. This is still the special instrument of the Tatars, which seems to suggest that the balalaika was of Tatar rather than of Slavonic origin. The guitar is, perhaps, the national instrument of the greatest antiquity, and possesses the most interesting literature. There is also the *gusle*, a stringed instrument which played a very important part in the music of ancient Russia. This instrument is supposed by many authorities to be extinct. A few years ago, however, it was remarked that a *gusle*-player still lived on the banks of Lake Onega. An enthusiastic amateur, in a high official position in St. Petersburg, telegraphed to the governor of the Olonets district to detain the man at any cost—even to arrest him if necessary. The governor, hearing that he was "wanted" by the police, fled with his *gusle* into the wilds of Siberia, and has never been heard of again. Thanks to misdirected enthusiasm, the last chance of hearing this instrument is now lost! Other instruments allied to the balalaika are the *basbasha* of the Little Russians—commonly possessing eight strings, but occasionally having as many as twenty—and the *chogovar*, the balalaika of the Mingolians, a Caucasian tribe. The *chogovar* has four silken strings, one of which is shorter than the others. This string is sounded continuously, and acts as a pedal in the highest register. Although the Mingolians are an oriental people, their melodies are not at all oriental in character. They are purely diatonic, and evidently based on scales borrowed from the ecclesiastical modes. (Presumably modes, Ionian and Dorian.) This is to be accounted for by the fact that the Mingolians, like the Georgians, are devout members of the Greek church, and the influence of religious music seems to have entirely wiped out the memory of their old musical system.

THE CHAIRMAN.—I should like to move that a very hearty vote of thanks be given to Mr. Ross. I knew the name of the instrument by sight, and I have learnt the way to procure it for the first time in my life. I have certainly learnt more about the instrument than I ever knew before.

The vote of thanks was passed unanimously.

MUSICAL ASSOCIATION.

January 9, 1901.

Mr. SOUTHWELL (who accepted the chair pending the arrival of Dr. Madson).—Pardon me for standing for a few moments between our lecturer and you. It is my sad duty to announce that since the last meeting we have lost a most distinguished member, Dr. William Paley, one of the founders of this Association, who died last week at the age of eighty-six. Here we may pass over the fact that he was widely recognised as a great engineering authority. Upwards of fifty years ago he was Professor of that science in the Elphinstone College, Bombay, and then he occupied the same position at University College, London, and later at the Royal Engineer establishment at Chatham. He was a member of several Government Royal Commissions, and, amongst other works, planned the Imperial Railways of Japan. But we knew him as a musician—music was his recreation, and he was especially proud of his Oxford Mus. Doc. degree, which he took in 1869. It was owing to him that the University of London established a Faculty of Music, and for twelve years he acted as their Registrar. He was an Hon. Fellow of the Royal College of Organists and a member of several scientific and learned societies. Chess shared with music his chief attention outside his purely professional work. Beyond his numerous writings on many important subjects I think we may count as the greatest that masterly work "The Philosophy of Music." It was the first attempt, so far as I know, to reconcile the philosophy of aesthetics with the acoustics of music. Dr. Paley also read some valuable papers here, and, in the early days of the Association, was a very regular attendant at our meetings, taking part in several discussions with no small advantage to us. Besides all his learning he was a practical musician, an excellent organist, and he played almost to the very last. At the first part of the funeral service, which our President attended with other members, I heard, with great pleasure, his *Motet*, which contains so masterly an exposition of the Hundredth Psalm, in eight parts. It is, I venture to think, one of the finest specimens of the art of counterpoint we can boast of. I will ask you to pass a vote of condolence to be sent to Dr. Paley's family from the members of this Association.

Passed unanimously.

January 5, 1901.

DR. CHARLES MACLEAN,
Vice-President,
IN THE CHAIR.

*MUSIC AND MUSICIANS OF THE WALLON
PROVINCES OF BELGIUM.*

By W. W. COLEMAN.

Before teaching on the musical side of my paper it may be well to point out that the population of Belgium is divided into two sections; the Flemings of Teutonic origin speaking a language which is practically Dutch, and the Walloons, of Celtic origin, speaking French and Walloon. The latter occupy the S.W. provinces of Liège, Namur, Hainaut, S. Brabant, and W. Luxembourg, and speak a Romance dialect, very akin to northern French of the thirteenth century. Roughly speaking, the Flemish dialect predominates in the proportion of nine to eight, so that it cannot be said that there is much difference between the two populations in point of numbers. But the two races are quite distinct, as much so as Welsh and English, and for the same ethnical reasons. The very word Walloon has the same significance as the word Welsh, both meaning stranger. Neither Fleming nor Walloon hides his origin. The former is fair, phlegmatic, and inclining more to the reflective than the active life. The latter is dark, sanguine, hardy and energetic. The Walloons were always to the fore in revolutionary struggles, especially those which culminated in the overthrow of the Dutch in 1830. But they were already very warlike as far back as the fifteenth century, as you may learn in a very pleasant way from the pages of Scott's novel, "Quentin Durward," or from Michiels's "Louis XI."

It is a fact which is not quite in harmony with the theories of Mr. Ruskin's disciples that the industrial and commercial pursuits which are paramount in Belgium do not hinder the people from taking an absorbing interest in the arts. The

frequent mixture of the blood of the northern race with that of sunny Spain may partially account for this. Be that as it may, the Flemish have an innate love of painting and feeling for colour.

Antwerp has been for centuries a metropolis of art and every Flemish bourgeois strives to include among his belongings a fine picture. On the other hand, the Walloons possess remarkable musical aptitude, which domestic wars and social upheavals have in some measure lessened, and it is my mission to-day to treat of their achievements, though I disclaim any pretence to be an authority on the subject. I take, however, a great interest in it, and circumstances conspired last year to so deepen this feeling that I made a journey to Liège in order to learn something more than I could learn from books of this remarkable race of industrial workers from whose midst have come to us such excellent artists as Vincentzempo, Ysaÿe, César Thomson, and Jean Gémady, and such composers as Grétry, César Franck, and Orlando di Lasso.

I think I may trace this interest to its first source by recalling certain conversations with my friend Jean Gémady, the distinguished young violinist.

Monsieur Gémady talked to me much about his native town, Liège, which is celebrated in the arts of peace and war, the manufacture of firearms being its leading industry. But especially he spoke of the mining population of the province, whose musical proclivities put those of the Welsh miners in the shade, for whilst rivalling them in love of choral music, sending choirs like "Les Liégeois" and the "Disciples of Grétry" all over Europe to win applause at concerts and prizes at competitions, they have a really extraordinary love for and appreciation of violin playing. They are not cultured people; they know little about literature and politics; have perhaps never heard of Gladstone or Bismarck, yet they know all that is worth knowing about every famous violinist of the day. In 1874 some workmen clubbed together to give Vincentzempo a laurel wreath, which he kept to his last hour as one of his most highly prized souvenirs. In a letter to his friend Kadoux he wrote: "Decidedly our country is dedicated to the violinist—*il en jouit comme des diamants*." Yes, these sons of toil are possessed with a passion for stringed instruments. It seems to be in the blood, and Liège is a nursery of violinists and cellists who spread themselves all over the world, making music for high and low, forming, as it were, a tributary stream to the great river of art. Ysaÿe and his three condisciples in the Ysaÿe Quartet; Martin Marink, until recently principal Professor at the Paris Conservatoire; his successor, Grétry; Jean Gémady, and many other soloists, hail from LIÈGE. At the

Cologne Concert in the Paris Exhibition, out of eighteen first violins twelve were from the Walloon provinces. The same can be said of many first violins and the principal 'cello at the Lamoureux Concerts, and of a large proportion of the artists in many other first class orchestras. But not all, not even all the first-rate players can obtain engagements in the best rank, as a little incident which occurred to me during my visit to the Paris Exhibition will aptly illustrate. I was sitting in a restaurant in the Street of Nations listening to the strains of a very excellent little band. I hardly knew what prompted me to ask the leader if he came from Liège, but I did so, and his reply was in the affirmative. Later, a vocalist sang an admirably written *Ave Maria*, the composition of the Cellist of the orchestra. He also was from Liège. I hope you are with me when I say that such performers, who belong to that great proletariat of art which has sprung up on all sides owing to the facilities for cheap—even gratuitous, as far as Belgium is concerned—musical education, are deserving of sympathetic mention if they help to raise the taste of the public.

Many of the great Netherlandish composers of the past were born in the Walloon district. They did a great work in enriching the musical art in the direction of polyphony and counterpoint, and the world profits to this day by their labour.

How early the Walloons were interesting themselves in matters musical may be judged by the fact chronicled by Fétis, that in the thirteenth century Bates, who was a Canon at the Cathedral of Liège, wrote a book in Latin treating of a philosophy which found a place for music. But the best composer of the Walloon school appears two centuries later—Guillaume Dufay was born in Hainaut in 1400, and little is known of his life, but students who watch the evolution of music from simple to complex will find much in his work, primitive as it is, to interest them. In the course of a paper read to us in November, 1893, by our learned President, Sir John Storer, he spoke of Dufay as "the greatest master of his age" and gave us at the same time a masterly analysis of certain secular songs, the MS. of which had been found in the Bodleian Library. But his compositions consist mainly of church music. In fact, he was for ten years in the Pontifical Chapel of Rome and eventually became a priest, and I will take the opportunity of pointing out that since then almost every Belgian musician of note has been an illustrator in his own person of the proverb, "All roads lead to Rome." He has not always been a prophet in his own country, but he has invariably found the atmosphere of Rome sympathetic. For instance, Jacques des Prés, the next great composer of Walloon origin appearing in musical history, was

to be found in the Papal Chapel exactly one hundred years after Dufay, and was treated with exceptional distinction by Pope Sixtus IV. Passing afterwards into France, he was much liked by Louis XII. Indeed, the avocations of that period looked more in the sunshine of royal favour than those of later days. It is not uninteresting to hear what that great soul-lover, Martin Luther, thought of Josquin. "Ober musicians," he wrote, "do what they can with notes—Josquin does what he likes." His compositions were not only written for the church, but include some secular works which are said to be full of vivacity; and from the new Walloon talent comes out, a nature in which invisible gaiety and joviality are predominant. The composer who came after him, Roland de Lassus, better known as Orlando di Lasso, was still more conspicuous in this respect. Di Lasso was born in 1530, at Momp, and was destined to receive the homage of all the musicians of his time. Royal personages vied with each other in doing him honors, and eventually he was summoned by Albert V., Duke of Bavaria, to the Court of Munich. This Prince, in character, had but little in common with the King Louis of Bavaria of our own time, who was the friend and benefactor of Wagner; but he resembled him so far that he became the patron of Lasso, and by giving him immunity from all worldly cares enabled him to work in peace for the world's benefit. Thus history presents the spectacle of two princes and two composers joining hands across the centuries. Lasso was, above all, versatile. He wrote much music, sacred and profane, his works numbering no less than 2,000, and it is evident that he must have lived laborious days. Yet he earned a reputation at Munich not only for his music but for his gay humour and conversational powers. But, ah! his brilliant mental faculties became obscured in later life, and the man who was wont to sit the table in a court became a victim to needless melancholy. A grand life's work, however, had already been accomplished, and it may be said that, next to Palestrina, he was the greatest glory of the sixteenth century.

Of the seventeenth century I have no story to tell. In Belgium many makers of musical instruments flourished, and history was made in connection with the national act of which we know so little here—that of the Carillonier. But bell-music is rather a Flemish than a Walloon act. The most prominent among the earlier composers, Nathanael Van der Gheyn, was a Fleming, and beyond Tooman, with its chime of lute bells, I know of no Walloon town of importance which has a bell-tower with clavier or keyboard attached. It is not until the eighteenth century that André Ernest Modeste Grétry, whose name looms large in the records of Walloon music, first appears on the scene. Grétry was born

at Liège in 1741, and at the age of seven began life, like so many musicians, as a chorister boy, learning the elements of music in the College of St. Denis.

In 1755, an Italian Opera Company gave some representations at Liège, which included Pergolesi's "Servo Padovano," and these made an impression on the young composer which coloured his whole career.

He contracted a taste for the type of music which is simple and goes straight to the heart. No complexities appear in his scores, instrumentation to the modern sense was unknown to him, but he knew how to move his public by the elegance of his melodies, by his declamation and perhaps by his knowledge of stage devices—in fact, one opera of his, to which posterity has shown complete indifference, was performed over 500 times, a noteworthy run even for modern days. This was in his city of adoption, Paris, Gettry being indissolubly connected with French art. Of the long series of operas he wrote, numbering about fifty, "Richard Cœur de Lion" is the best known through the excerpts occasionally given in the concert-rooms. But there is one tune of his which, originally written as a quartet in the opera of "Lodovik," has become historical from the fact that it was commended by the Bourbons after the Restoration and used as a loyal tune. The words of the song have become almost proverbial in Belgium, though Belgian musicians have not always put into practice the sentiment they contain. *Qu'est ce que vous avez gagné sans de sa famille ?* ("What can one be better off than in the bosom of his family?") M. Hillier will perhaps let us hear the "Home, sweet home" of the Belgians.

As to Gettry's operas all have gone and have gained him a reputation which would have been much greater had he not been so completely eclipsed by Gluck, working on similar lines but with powers infinitely greater. Nevertheless the name of Gettry is an illustrious one. Napoleon made him Chevalier of the Legion of Honour and awarded him a pension. He died, in 1803, at the Hermitage in Montmorency, formerly the house of Roquema, and his funeral was attended by all the notabilities of the time. Fifteen years later his wish that his heart should repose in his native land of Wallonia was realized. It was transferred from Paris to Liège, and in the year also a statue was inaugurated to his memory amidst festivities and gale performances at which Mendelssohn and Meyerbeer were present.

I must not omit mention of Antoine Grawick, another Liège composer of the eighteenth century, inasmuch as he seems to have had much success in London as an operatic composer. I confess that until the other day I was in the same plight as the town councillors of Liège, who, being requested to call a street after the name of Grawick, refused

on the ground that they had never heard of him. If anyone present has specialised the musical history of London and knows something of Grzesiek's doings, I hope he will speak on the subject.

The music of the Walloon composers is mostly of the type known as universal. I mean that it is not dialect music like that of Norway or Bohemia. But one Jean Noel Hamal, born in Liège in 1769, seems to have imparted to his music something distinctively Walloon. At any rate, in his grand comic opera, "The Voyage to Chauldefontaine," of which I have the score here to-day, there are choral numbers based upon the popular melodies known as *Crisangones*, about which I shall have a good deal to say. Meanwhile I may remark that the serious music of this opera is quite in the style of the great composers of the period. A troupe from Liège gave a performance of Hamal's opera a few years ago at the Moussater in Paris, with, I believe, considerable success, especially as regards the choral parts, inspired, as I have said, by popular tunes, of which it seems a suitable moment to speak, as M. Deville has to leave us early. He and M. Hillier are both from Liège, and have kindly volunteered to give us an idea of the Liège *Crisangone*, which is sung and danced at every *Kermesse* and parish fête in the Province of Liège, and is indigenous to the country. The *Crisangone* is interesting to the musician, to the folklorist, and to the student of human nature, telling at once of the love of music and of the native gaiety of the Walloon nature. Minors, male and female, descend in their cage to the dark recesses of the earth, the men singing gaily, the women bright of eye. True daughters of Eve the latter. Not even the hideous garb she wears can banish entirely from this *Musé Pison* of the mines her touches of native coquetry. You may believe that when these people are not in a holiday they let go the painter. A voice sings a couplet to a popular *Crisangone* tune, and a few, with hands raised, join in the refrain. Next come in all the numbers swell to dooms, while the bar grows hot and furious, the warty jingle louder and louder. The crowd swells to larger proportions still, spreads to the adjacent streets, and other solo singers start singing the same couplet. It is like so many bees swarming. The crowd by this time numbers perhaps two or three hundreds, all gasping along after a leader holding a flag stick, jiggling in and out of another like a gigantic serpent, surrounding partners by of the better classes, dancing around them and chaffing them, then dropping back again into single file, and so the fun proceeds till fatigue gets in. Such is the *Crisangone*, the *farandole* of Liège, as it has been called. I have omitted to mention that one among the dancers—he who brings up the rear—always carries a large bouquet.

This reminds me that there is in England a counterpart to the scene in the Carnival of Flowers, the so-called "Purry Fackly," which takes place annually at Helston, in Cornwall, on May 5. On this occasion the tradespeople and rustic lads and lasses trip it merrily through the streets to the tune of "Sally the Glover," and those of the gentryfolk who can afford to throw off their native stiffness join in. There is some analogy between the words of the average Crémignone and the words of the Cornish song—both deal with the shafts of Cupid; but here the analogy ends. "Sally the Glover" deals in simple country sweethearting, whilst the Crémignones contain an undercurrent of satiric meaning, and are almost always—I must use a French word—*un peu laid*, not always *un peu*. They are like the more audacious of Beranger's songs, without the touch of sentiment which, as Robert Louis Stevenson remarked, the poet infused into all he wrote. But the songs of the people of Gallo-romance stock were ever so, and no one need be offended at what is frank and puerile rather than licentious.

I have with me to-day a collection of Crémignones, the compiler of which, Mr. Leonard Terry, gained the gold medal offered by the Ligue Society of Walloon literature for the most complete collection possible of the Ligue Crémignones.

Mr. Terry, a very distinguished antiquarian, wrote, or began to write, a preface to the book, which was unfortunately cut short by death. Assistance was also given to him by Mr. Chaurouat, to whom an amount had been awarded in the same competition. It is here and at the service of anyone who cares to look it through. There exist societies which arrange Crémignone competitions, performing them with elaborate costumes, and sometimes the towns organise competitions in which prizes are offered for Crémignones of a dignified character, odes addressed to fatherland, to the king, to the constitution, and so forth. But these are box-room varieties. They do not smack of the soil.* In the real Ligue Crémignone there is, if the truth be said, more of earth than of heaven; but it is beneficent mother earth, who spares her Walloon children the heartaches which lurk in the Volkenlieder of some other countries.

With regard to the music, Mr. Terry points out the curious quality, possibly of some of them, but what strikes me most is their frequent irregularity of rhythm. In modern music one is often sadly bothered by uneven measures of time, but these good Ligions are not bothered at all, but sing them absolutely without effort. Baring Gould, in a preface to his collection of West of England folk-songs, traces all the tunes to some centre of musical culture. With these Crémignones it is quite otherwise. The very irregularity of the rhythm shows them to have been a spontaneous improvisation of the people.

(At this juncture a selection of Liège Crisillons was sung by MM. Dordier and Hillier.)

To some extent you are now able to form an idea of the Walloon Crisillon. Deuced as well as sung with chorus you can well imagine it is something quite different.

I trust I am not in conflict with the austere traditions of this Society in treating of these popular songs. They are not high art, but I consider that they form a guide to certain traits of character, and a manifestation of the musical preferences of the people, and, as such, I have offered them to you.

Last year, in company with Monsieur Géusdy, I paid a visit at Liège to the director of the Conservatoire, Monsieur Bédoux. Like the heads of our own great musical schools he is a man of all-around-accomplishments; not only a musician of great gifts (whose operas have been given frequently at Brussels, Liège, and Paris), but versed in all the arts and an accomplished public speaker. The welcome he extended to me, both as friend of Monsieur Géusdy and representative of this Association, was very precious. Any information he could give me either personally or by referring me to the library of the Conservatoire was placed at my service, and I in my turn place it at yours to-day.

The Conservatoire of Liège is probably the oldest in Belgium, having a history which dates further back than 1830, that eventful year which means so much to every Belgian patriot.

A proposal was made as far back as 1798 by one Henri Heusel for the establishment of a music school on account of the decadence of the restitutes, the only homes for instruction for eight centuries. Holy Mother Church had, since the revolution, ceased to be all in all to the art of music. Heusel's idea, however, was not realized till a quarter of a century later.

In 1823 a school of music was founded, under the direction of a nephew of the great Michel, and already in May, 1827, there were thirty-five pupils and ten professors, but in 1830 all concord of sweet sounds was silenced by the clash of arms. For a moment the school was discontinued, but after the declaration of Belgium's independence the government showed a desire, to which we must give unstinted admittance, to create institutions for the fostering of art, and, amongst others, the Conservatoire at Liège profited by its generosity. It had never absolutely shut its doors, though for a time nothing in the way of music was heard in Liège save the strains of the Brahmspönce, the Marschhaus of Belgium. But now it began a new period of slow but sure development. Michel was present in the encouragement of literary, by the side of musical, education, and instituted a course of French

literature which was afterwards supplemented by a chair of history and musical æsthetics. After Michel came Étienne Sourès, and in 1872 J. Théodore Haden was appointed director, and has remained at the helm ever since. He is just the man to keep alive the flame of artistic enthusiasm without which the musician is nowhere. A lover of the classical in music, he never neglects the more modern developments of the art, as evidenced by the programmes of the Conservatoire Concerts, and among his innovations as teacher may be mentioned a class for lyric declamation, evening classes for adults, and public competitions in composition at night. In his younger days he himself gained the Grand Prix de Rome, which is offered every two years by the Academy of Belgium, to be competed for by the students of the many subsidised schools of Belgium. Of these subsidised I should like now to speak a word. It is quite remarkable how they stimulate the musical development of the nation, and yet, financially speaking, they are of sufficiently modest proportions. For instance, the Conservatoire of Liège, with its forty professors and fifteen assistant teachers, only receives £13,000 annually from the State, from the town £800, and from the provinces £170. The so-called Royal Conservatoires are endowed as follows:—

Brussels, a world famous institution, receives £8,000 annually.

Opéra, a school which has trained many excellent musicians, including Govaert, the principal of the Brussels Conservatoire, receives £12,500, and Antwerp £4,000. But most Belgian towns have schools of music which are municipal institutions, subsidised by the town only—Gothic schools of music in miniature.

I am not prepared to say how many of these exist, but I have a note that as early as 1873 official documents show that 216 schools existed then, some giving primary instruction only, but some being genuine academies, embracing all branches of the art.

The Walloon towns of Tournai, Valenciennes, Namur, and Charleroi may be regarded as possessing admirable schools of this kind.

Regarding to the subject of the Prix de Rome, I find that it is not universally known that this competition exists in Belgium as well as in France, and so I conclude that a few particulars in regard to the way it is conducted may be acceptable. After a preliminary examination as to the ability of the competitors is regard to four-part writing, six are chosen for the final competition, and the libretti of two cantatas, one in Finnish, and one in Walloon dialect, are placed in their hands, with the option of choosing which they like. These libretti, I may add,

are previously chosen in a preliminary competition among Belgian authors. Twenty-three days are given to the competitors in which to score the cantata, and they are confined together within the walls of a house, with a garden in which to take the air. They are allowed to communicate freely with each other but not with the outside world. At the end of twenty-three days they give in the score and every scrap of paper upon which they have made notes, and copies of the scores are handed to each member of the jury, upon whom rests the duty of awarding the first or Grand prize, a pension of 4,000 francs annually for four years, a so-called first second prize, and other honourable mentions. Each competitor gives a hearing to the jury of his work with piano, chorus, and solo singers, and the decision is made as soon as the whole *ex-harc* has been heard. The winner of the Grand prize has his cantata performed at the next sitting of the Academy of Belgium, and the winner of the first second prize enjoys the same honour the following year, during which there is, of course, no competition. The first prize winner must satisfy a literary examiner before he starts on his travels. This accomplished, he is obliged to travel in foreign countries, and to send home every year an important work. The happy winner of this prize receives a reception at the Town Hall, and an ovation from friends and neighbours, speeches, flowers, and lyric enthusiasm being the order of the day. Other countries, other nations. It is hardly imaginable that any Englishman should think of organizing such a reception on the occasion, let us say, of the laurel-crowning of a Mendelssohn scholar. Such honours are reserved here for the heroes of the cricket or football field.

As I have already explained, the subscriptions allowed to the *Litge Conservatoire* do not amount to much, yet for many years no fee has been asked from any student; but now foreigners are called upon to contribute 200 francs yearly. It is thought to be hardly fair to ask the taxpayers to contribute to the education of foreigners. None are admitted without subscribing to an examination in which their musical capacities are put to the test. Not only are they not admitted unless they pass this examination, but if, after admission, they prove not to be workers they are not allowed to persist. I need hardly say that no institution without subscription could afford to do this. Another feature is that the poorer students who are deemed worthy of it are supplied with money—*Bourses d'étude*—on leaving, to continue their education. In short, the great object of this national scheme is to cultivate, at the expense of the State, the musically talented. Our system is to vote large sums for spreading a universal name for music in primary schools rather than educating

those who possess special gifts. This is admirable from the ethical point of view—it would seem to secure the greatest happiness of the greatest number. But there is much to be said in favour of the Continental system too. Institutions subsidised by Government can afford to accept pupils who are not promising. I submit that this is an advantage not easily to be over-estimated. Again, but for State and class-teacher of the brilliant series of artists which these subsidised schools have turned out would have been engaged in some other occupation, and their talents lost to the world.

Apart from State and municipal aid the *Lige Conservatoire* enjoys the advantage of a legacy of 100,000 francs left by *Mme. Dumont Lamarche*, the widow of a rich manufacturer, the interest of which goes towards the giving of annual chamber concerts for the people. These concerts are free and, except that there is no collection afterwards, they resemble those of our own Sunday concert societies. Such artists as *Jacques, Yvonne, Gervilly*, the *Belgian Quartet*, &c., give their services for a nominal fee, and the beautiful theatre of the *Conservatoire* might be filled a dozen times over were all the applicants admitted.

It must be allowed that the worthy manufacturer showed much originality when he hit upon this excellent device for giving pleasure to his fellow-citizens. If only some English philanthropists would follow in his footsteps, there would be much rejoicing in the ranks of those who are working to bring the existing influence of good music within the range of the poorer classes.

In speaking of the group of Walloon violinists who have lent distinction to the land of their birth, I must give the place of honour to *Henri Vieuxtemps* (born 1820), a pupil of *De Bériot* and an artist who may be said to have formed a link between two schools, being at once a great *Beethoven* player and a great virtuoso. I had the privilege of hearing him play once—in the autumn of his life—if privilege it can be called. The grand style was there, but there was traces of decadence which are only too well accounted for by the paralysis which most than already have been threatening him, and which overcame him shortly afterwards. The testimony of *Schumann, Wagner, Berlioz* and a host of others goes to prove that in his day he was of the elite among interpretative artists. As to his compositions, they are not so frequently heard as of old, but the Concerto with which *Lady Hallé* made her début at the *Philharmonic*, the *poetical Ravans*, the *Fantasia Appassionata*, the *Fantasia Caprice*, and the *Balade and Polonaise* are certain to retain their hold upon the public for many years to come. The *Balade* is, to my mind, the most beautiful page which came from his pen, being characterised by a certain noble simplicity which is

lacking in most of his works. As an example of musician's title-tattle I may mention that I have heard it greatly repeated that the *Balade* was written for him by Wieniawski. The statement hardly needs refutation seeing that Wieniawski was a youth at the time and had not begun to write. Vicautemps was a native of Verviers, and in 1811, on the occasion of the translation of his remains from Algiers, where he died, to his native town, the ceremony was attended not only by all the artistic celebrities of Belgium, but by thousands of the workpeople of the district and by strangers from all parts. In the funeral procession his *Quatuor* violin was carried upon a cushion by no less a person than Eugene Ysaÿe, then, of course, a very young man. Particulars of Vicautemps's wanderings all over the world, which probably contributed to the shortening of his life, are contained in a biography written by M. Rodaux, in which may also be seen some appreciations of Ysaÿe's talents, a quotation from which seems particularly apposite at a moment when that artist is so prominent a feature in our London musical life. In his last days Vicautemps wrote these pathetic words: "In imagination I hear always his *chatterelle*. It haunts me. Would I could hear it once again!" We Londoners are more fortunate. I was present only four days ago at the first concert of the Ysaÿe *Quartet* and can say that the *chatterelle*, or E string, of the leader has lost none of its magic.

A Homeric figure in the world of music is Ysaÿe, a man of extraordinary parts, and without doubt the most distinguished living representative of Walloon music. As to his playing, the critics have exhausted the language of hyperbole in praising it, but of his powers of memorizing much less is known. Any of the known concertos he can play, any of the classical symphonies he can conduct without score at five minutes' notice. His friend, Mr. René Ortmans, tells me that on one occasion he put before him a concert piece in MS which he had just composed. He read it through carefully, remained for a few minutes in a brown study, and then, putting it aside, took up his violin and played it through without book and without a mistake. Of Ysaÿe as a conductor I have nothing to add, but one thing in connection with his work appears to me entirely admirable. He treats the members of his orchestra not as cyphers, but as friends and comrades. Best of all, he is always ready to extend a helping hand to struggling artists and composers.

I have to mention yet another Walloon artist of supreme distinction, Jean Gérardy, the violoncellist, whose gifts are, I am sure, known to all of you. His performances when a boy moved the veteran Platti to tears, and his style as a mature artist recalls that of the great Italian, not by virtue

of technique alone, but by the possession of a certain quality of austereous taste and artistic restraint which earned for his performances a foremost place among the 'cellists of his time.

Another violinist, César Thomson, who has visited London occasionally, is famous for his marvellous technique, and shines especially as a Paganini player, though he knows how to lead charm to a style like Stron's *Berosses*. Mr. Hillier is a pupil of his and tells me that we have never heard him in London to the best advantage. He has always played after a long journey and is much embarrassed by our English pitch. César Thomson studied the violin at the *Lige Conservatoire* between the ages of seven and fourteen, and spent the next twenty years of his life in wanderings all over the world. When he at last returned to *Lige* and gave a concert, the enthusiasm of the people was so great that the Government made him an offer to have a class at the *Conservatoire* for him with a large salary. This offer he accepted and remained as professor at *Lige* until three years ago, when, I say, gave up his position at the *Brussels Conservatoire*, his place being taken by César Thomson. The vacant post at *Lige* is now occupied by David Muzin, a violinist of great talent, also a Walloon. Martin Harsák, formerly at *Paris*, is now settled in *Brussels*, so that many of the great violinists of Walloon have returned, if not to the "bosom of their family," at least to Belgium. There remains, however, to mention among the moderns, Joseph Delnoix and Armand Pusane, amongst the ancient, John Franz, composer of the well-known violin piece "*La saltarelle*."

Do not, however, think that I have mentioned all or nearly all the names of Walloon artists of exceptional ability. At *Lige*, as elsewhere, there exists a large number of talented men who have not the requisite influence or the social qualities which help to gain the ear of the public. Some occupy very respectable positions, if not brilliant ones, in the musical world, and live useful work-a-day lives; others join the proletariat of which I have spoken, and may do much good in their humble sphere provided they remain true to art and to themselves.

I propose to conclude this paper with a short review of the modern school of Walloon composers. One of them, César Franck, has been likened to a sun round which the younger Belgian and French composers of to-day revolve as satellites. It is true that now, ten years after his death, the spirit of César Franck shines brighter than ever it did during his lifetime, but for all that I do not feel that the simile is a happy one. He was all delicacy and reserve, and I would rather say, if I were to venture on to the thin line of metaphor, that he is like a forest flower reposing in a brilliant bouquet, and permeating the whole with its distinctive perfume. This

alent worker, to whom a brilliant career was in nothing and duty everything, sought to inspire his pupils with his own ideals, but not to impose upon them his own personality—unlike Wagner, he is an influence not an obsession. His French pupils and disciples, Brasseur, Chabrier, Chausson, de Castillon, Holman, Godisman, and, chief of all, Vincent D'Indy, have one characteristic in common. They are all loyal to the master, and measure their success by the extent to which they have been able to carry out his principles, but neither forgo his individuality. Of the work done by this group it is not within my province to treat to-day, but of a few of the Walloon composers I have something to say. To the many pathetic figures of musical history is to be added that of Guillaume Lohes, a young officer, native of Verviers, who adopted the career of a musician in direct opposition to the wishes of his parents. He was encouraged to take this step by many eminent artistic friends, and justified their encouragement by winning a first second in the Prix de Rome at the first time of asking.

After that he threw himself with much ardour, with too much ardour, in fact, into musical composition. Cantatas, orchestral works, songs, compositions for piano and for the chamber followed in quick succession from his pen until he reached the age of twenty-four, when the strain of so much work and excitement began to tell upon a constitution none too robust, and before the year was out he died of brain exhaustion, the book of his closed at the first chapter. His best known work is a Sonata for piano and violin published at the instance of Ysaye, and frequently played by that artist. Mr. Ernest has played it with an intimate friend of Lohes, Madame Irma Seibe, and he will perhaps tell us something of his impressions. At one of the recent Ysaye concerts at Queen's Hall, an Adagio for string orchestra was announced but not given, so that I am unable to speak from experience of any of his works.

Another composer, no longer on this side of the Styx, is Adolphe Samuel, formerly director of the Ghent Conservatoire, composer of many symphonies and of an oratorio, "Christus," which has been heard with much acceptance in Germany as well as in Belgium.

Ernst Mathias, who took Samuel's place at Ghent after his death, is one of the foremost among Belgian musicians. He has devoted his attention especially to the setting of operas and cantatas with subjects derived from Belgian popular legends. Among his operas may be cited "Recluse" and "L'Éclaircie de Roland."

Another operatic composer of note is Philippe Hübner, Kapellmeister to the Emperor Frederick of Germany. Besides his operas, "Merlin" and "Ingo," he wrote several

important instrumental works, including a violin concerto and some chamber music.

Mons. Radoux has turned out several distinguished pupils from his composition class at Liège, of one of whom, Joseph Jongen, he is, I think, especially proud. Jongen won the Grand Prix de Rome, and there is every indication that his career will be a successful one. A symphony of his (in A major) has been much applauded both at Brussels, under Yanze, and at Liège, conducted by himself; whilst Jean Gérardy has played a violoncello concerto, which Jongen wrote for and dedicated to him, with great success at Darmstadt. I can also speak from personal knowledge of a beautiful and distinctly original string quartet of his. Judging from this work Jongen only needs a little compression of the musical idea, which like nearly all modern men he has a tendency to over-develop, to take high rank among modern composers of chamber music. Two excellent pupils of Radoux are Dupuis Sytoux and Charles Selsiders, the latter of Dutch origin and evidently a modern amongst moderns. He has written a sonata to which he has affixed no key signature. I suppose it may be called, in the latest musical jargon, *amittente*.

A brilliant writer for piano in the virtuosic school is Jules Debevo, a sort of Walloon Liszt, whose *Rhapsodie Walloone* is a popular work amongst advanced amateurs. Several Walloon writers have provided songs for male choir written specially for the *Société "La Légion"* and the "*Disciples of Grétry*." This is a department of composition which has been much neglected since Mendelssohn.

I must not omit mention of François Rasse and of Théophile Yanze, brother to the violinist, both composers and players of considerable capacity. I regret that I am unacquainted with the compositions of Théophile Yanze, as his brother tells me they are typically Walloon in character.

An adequate appreciation of César Franck by one who knows him through and through has yet to be written. I hear that his son, a French College professor, is likely to undertake the task. This is welcome news, as we are likely to get glimpses in this way of the composer's inner life, other than those obtained by a study of his music. The simple facts of his biography are these: He was born at Liège, December 10, 1822, and made his first studies at the Conservatoire of that town, which he did not leave for Paris till the age of fifteen years. I want you to note this because it establishes his relation to Walloon music. He spent the rest of his life in France, but though he was not naturalized till 1873, there is no denying that his sympathies remained to the end with the country of his adoption.

In his first year at the Conservatoire at Paris he won a

special prize by a remarkable feat for one so young. A difficult piece was given him to read at sight, which he not only read but transposed a third lower without the slightest hesitation. He gained another prize by writing a fugue which is used at the Conservatoire as a model to this day. I have no time to allude to his youthful compositions. His first real success was made in oratorio, a form for which he had a special predilection. The subject chosen was the Biblical story of Ruth, but the libretto is a very poor one. The musical setting, however, includes some of the most attractive music which Franck ever wrote. It was produced at the Conservatoire in 1849, its success was immediate, and he received much sympathetic encouragement from Meyerbeer and Spontini who were present. It is interesting to follow up the history of "Ruth," which was re-written and produced again in 1871, and once more it scored a decided success. From that date till his death he was engaged in producing the works by which posterity will judge him. Unlike Rossini, his best work was done late in life. For twenty-five years he lay fallow or almost fallow as a composer, but he has shown the world that the simple life of teacher and organist may be as noble as any, and as prolific in good results. The war in 1870 must have stirred him to the very depths. Wonder to relate he began his oratorio, "The Beatitudes," the text of which is taken from the Sermon on the Mount, during the siege of Paris, his thoughts far away from the musical work going on around him. After the war was over he succeeded his master, Reineck, as professor of the organ at the Conservatoire, and in the same year he wrote another oratorio, "The Redemption."

This work is musically far more ambitious than "Ruth," but more remote from the sympathies of the "average musical man," as the French have it. For Jan Gounod never condescended to write. A comparison with Gounod's "Redemption," so well known in England, seems obvious, but they are as unlike as Gregorian chant and modern hymn. The two men are as much at the opposite poles of musical thought as Brahms and Tchaikowsky. The comparative austerity of Franck's music is partly accounted for by the nature of the words, which have a philosophical rather than a religious basis. Do not infer from this that Franck was not a religious man. On the contrary, he was the devoted of Catholics, and such was his anxiety that his works for the Church (small and large they were very numerous, and include many works written for his favorite instrument the organ) were considered by him as much in the light of obligation as of works of art. This especially applies to his magnum opus, "The Beatitudes," given for the first and only time in Britain by the Glasgow Choral Union in February last, and received

with respectful attention if not with enthusiasm by the audience, whilst the critics testified to the splendid mastery of the work to the rare beauty of the vocal parts, and to the exalted heights to which the composer rises when the purely religious element is present. Opinions about this work, or indeed about any of his works, differ very much. His brother professors at the Conservatoire showed considerable coldness towards him and regarded his methods as empirical. As if every Beethovenian, or Wagnerian, had not something in him of the empirical! Quite recently, Herr Hanslick, a leader of thought in Vienna, has pronounced against him as he pronounced against Wagner in bygone days. But the number of admirers of Franck's genius grows apace. His son is receiving almost daily shoals of letters from enthusiasts all over Europe. In short, as he tersely puts it, "the tide is rising," and Franck has now to be reckoned with as a musical force.

Time will not allow me to do more than mention such important works as the cantata "Psyche," the oratorio "Rebecca," the symphonic poems "Solides," and "Chasseur maudit," played by Mr. Wood's orchestra in 1897, the Variations Symphoniques for piano and orchestra, the very fine, but extremely difficult Prelude, Choral, and Fugue for pianoforte, and the two operas, played at Monte Carlo shortly after the composer's death, the cause of which, by the way, has been described as "Gluck in modern garb." But of his great Symphony in D I can speak, having been present at its performance, under Larocque's, in November, 1896. It is my conviction that this work, from its locality, unity of design, and beauty of inspiration, will take a permanent place in the repertoire of the Symphony Concerts.

I have a particularly vivid recollection of the Sérénade, which is extremely bright and sparkling. This Symphony was also played under Mr. Wood, at a Sunday concert in March last.

Franck's chamber compositions consist of a string quartet, a quintet for piano and strings, and the sonata played to-day. I was told by Monsieur Ysaye himself last Saturday, that these works will appear in the programme of the Popular Concerts this season. The sonata is César Franck's best known work, and it might never have seen the light but for the action of Ysaye, who, on a visit one day at the composer's house, secured it from a heap of MS, and, after trying it, walked off with it to the publishers and arranged to have it produced at his own risk. Thus in the sonata we shall have the pleasure of hearing to-day, the first movement of which is to a more romantic vein than usual with Franck. The subjects are very little developed, but they undergo various transformations when

they occur in subsequent movements. In the recitative you have a reminder of the theoretical element, which is seldom absent from Belgian music. In the *Finale* you will notice a clever device. But with a musical audience like this further analysis is superfluous.

There only remains to mention the date of César Franck's death, at the age of sixty-eight, which took place on November 10, 1890. His biographers insist in saying that the quest life he led was the one most suited to him, that his destiny was the one he would himself have chosen. But I cannot help thinking that if his life had been fuller and richer, if his experience of the world he shunned, its joys and its sorrows, had been wider, it would have reacted upon his music and vitalised it. The mood of exalted austerity would have recurred less frequently, its place taken, perhaps, by the *Jour de Fête*, which is the flower of the Walloon race.

This great Walloon race deserves more credit than it receives from musical historians for its contributions to musical art. The older composers are merged in the Netherlandish school, Gœttry and Franck in the French, while the rest are known as Belgians simply. I submit that the Walloon school of music deserves to take its place in history by the side of the Flemish school of painting. I can give it no higher praise.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN—It is the custom for the Chairman to pick up such crumbs as fall from the lecturer's table in the way of available remark; but when, as here, the lecture is full, there is very little of that left. We are greatly indebted both to lecturer and to performers. The former has given us exactly the sort of traveller's tale which we need, for we cannot be always spacing notions out of our own skulls. The performers have given us music of a class which in, I think, rarely heard within these walls. César Franck, if not exactly a master, was very nearly a master, and personally he was an interesting, noble, and pathetic figure. He was perforce a seclude, he had a life of constant labour, and he taught and taught; nevertheless, he produced music which will certainly yet make its way through Europe. He has been called a Bash who has read "Paradise." And in spite of being an organist, he was the only person in France who founded a school of general composition. That fine St. Clothilde organ, one of Cavallé Col's *chef d'œuvre*, has

seen great developments. The Conservatoire taught open-writing; Franck set himself to teach pure orchestral work and chamber work. Of his pupils, there are twenty or thirty well known to Parisians. Those best known to us are Auguste Hahn and Vincent d'Indy, especially the latter, who has inherited Franck's mantle, while possessing many separate gifts of his own. Doubtless you will consider me a person of one idea, but in the face of this lecture I cannot but refer to remarks several times made before regarding the Celtic element in modern music. In Bohemia, which has done so much to heaven German music, the Celts and Slavs exist side by side. Lombardy, the home of modern Italian opera, is purely Celtic. As the lecturer has pointed out, the Wallons are the same, and undoubtedly the d'Indy school, originating as above indicated, is a Celtic art product. As I have several times said, I believe the Slavs and Celts are destined to divide the immediate musical future between them.

[A vote of thanks to lecturer and performers was then passed.]

Mr. KRAMER.—Mr. Cobbett has asked me to say something about Lebes. I have had the good fortune to play this sonata to which Mr. Cobbett has referred, with the well-known violinist Irma Seibe, with whose family Lebes was on terms of intimate friendship. I need say, that even a passing glance at that sonata showed me that it belongs to the ultra-extreme section of one of the most extreme modern schools. It has all the characteristics of those schools, which you all know are pretty much the same, whether they be Scandinavian, Belgian, or Russian, or anything else, and which, to sum it up in a few words, consist in a desire to introduce new rhythmical and harmonic combinations at any cost. I was not surprised to find the second movement written in 3 time, and as to harmonic peculiarities, I may mention there are chords as if with something like ten or twelve accidentals in front of them. And what is worse, there are passages in the work—sometimes of whole pages—where one really does not know what the composer is driving at, where it wants an immense mental effort to make out in what key even he is. Every time I play the sonata and come to those passages I cannot help thinking of Artemus Ward, the American humorist, who, when showing his famous panorama, used to come to a part where there was positively nothing to be seen, and then turned to his audience and in a confidential sort of way said: "Ladies and gentlemen, this is a horse; you may not believe it, but you can take my word for it; it is a horse." In this manner I always feel inclined to say: "Ladies and gentlemen, what I am playing is quite correct; you may not believe it, but you can

take my word for it; it is correct." Of course, we must remember that Lohse was only eighteen or nineteen when he wrote the sonata. We can therefore not wonder at his wishing to outdo his master Franck himself. But we must at the same time wonder at the occasional tokens of real genius which we come across in it. In fact, the $\frac{3}{4}$ movement is a perfect gem of its kind and never fails to produce a deep impression when played by such an artist as Madame Sefir. In conclusion, I may say that if Lohse was not a genius, he was certainly a man of exceptionally great talent, and if he had lived long enough to learn the great art of self-restraint, he would surely have done work worthy to rank with the very best of his kind.

Mr. SORRESCARE.—I will detain you for only a few minutes, for the interesting lecture and illustrations we have listened to have gone on a little longer than our lectures usually do. I am sure you will all agree that Mr. Cobbett has made out a case for the Walloon school of music. I almost wish he had dwelt a little longer on one or two features of it. As far as Joseph des Prez, if one wants to see what that master has done, we have only to look at the valuable book of his music our President has lately published with the assistance of his son and daughter. But to discourse on that would involve speaking on the development of counterpoint, and in the presence of such a master of the subject as Sir Frederick Bridge I had better be silent. Those little criticisms which were played are exceedingly interesting. One could not help remarking how strong they were in their rhythm and accent. The last was undoubtedly the oddest; but I would like to ask Mr. Herbert Benning, who should surely know, whether they are not also very much like the French chansons populaires?

Mr. BUNNING.—Very much like.

Mr. SORRESCARE.—Our chairman (in mentioning the music of the Gallic races) omitted the particular part of our country to which I believe he does not belong—Ireland. In examining racial claims for music one must not forget that Scotland, Ireland, and Wales have all displayed a certain originality of thought and diction.

Mr. Louis HINNAE.—Of course there is a great affinity between the Liège popular criticisms and the French chansons populaires. But, first of all, I must say that in Liège we have a quantity of Walloon folk-songs which we have not sung to you because it would have been impossible for you to understand the words. We took principally those with French words, and these, of course, have a great resemblance to the French songs. But the question is whether we Walloon people have taken some of the song-tunes from the French or the French from us? I think the latter quite likely. This is not a question of patriotism, so much the

more, as you must know, that we are not of the "Chauvin" sort in Belgium; on the contrary, we South Belgians are, by our nature and our descent, rather French in character; and it is easy to see the points of resemblance between the French people and the inhabitants of the Walloon part of Belgium which, as Mr. Collett said, is not to be confounded with the Flemish part. I should like to say one word about Lohé, to amplify Mr. Ernest's statement. He spoke of one of his works which is known to be very difficult. I had the pleasure of being acquainted with Lohé, and of hearing some of his other works, and particularly the work which he wrote for the Prix de Rome, which got not the first-second prize but the second second prize. That is quite a symphonic work, and is far more clear and fluent. The other works of Lohé for orchestra are, though very elaborate, quite comprehensible, and if this seems appeared so difficult and incomprehensible it must be remembered that it is the most difficult of his works. Yes, Lohé was really a genius, and I cannot help feeling very sorry for it, as no doubt his genius was the cause of his premature death.

Mr. GARNIER.—I thank you very much for your vote of thanks. I desire to give my own personal thanks to Mr. Ernest and M. Heller for their remarks.

PUBLISHED IN 1911.

By J. F. BRIDGE, Mus. Doc., Oxon.,

IN TWO PARTS.

THE CHESTER "RECORDERS."

By JOSEPH C. BRIDGE, M.A., Mus. Doc., Oxon.

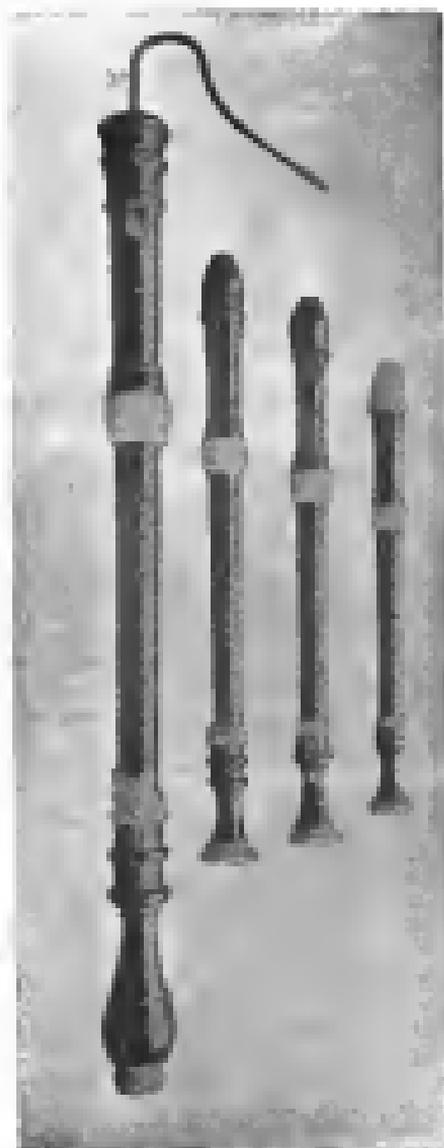
Two of the most old-fashioned towns to be found in Europe are Nuremberg and Chester, and comparisons between them are often made and similarities and coincidences pointed out. It is a remarkable fact that the only sets of Recorders now known to exist are to be found in those two cities. In the year 1888, the Chester Archaeological Society moved into new quarters in the freshly built central "Grosvenor" Museum. Amongst the lumber from its old rooms was a peculiarly shaped box (which crumbled to pieces almost immediately) and in it the Secretary found what he thought to be "an ancient bassoon." On viewing the remains, what was my delight to find that the Society was the possessor of a most set of ancient Flutes-a-Roc, or Recorders. These instruments in old times were made in "sets," like viola, and ranged from a Soprano, going up to—



to a Great Bass, going down to—



A facsimile of the Nuremberg set has been made for the Brussels Museum, after the direction of M. Victor Mahillon. These instruments were brought to England and performances given upon them at the "Invention" Exhibition.



Reproduced by kind permission of Mr. B. Sawbridge, Director of the
Liverpool Museum, Clatter.

The Chester set consists of soprano as—



Weight, 15 gr., length, 10 in., wood, red cedar, with very rough-pine
Alto is—



Tenor—



Bass* is—



The Chester instruments bear the name of *Stannby*, under a Tucker rose. The only reference I have found to this maker is in Hawkins's "History of Music" (Vol. V., p. 483, original ed.), where he speaks of his objection to flutes—viz., that they can never be made strictly in tune. He adds that flutes are generally in the key of F, and "to effect this truly is a matter of no small difficulty. The flutes of the latter kind of the younger Stannby approach the nearest of any to perfection, but those of *Stannby*, though excellent in their tone, are all too flat in the upper octave."

In passing, I may say that the *Stannby* were clever and excellent workmen: *Stannby, Sr.*, died in 1734, and *Stannby, Junr.*, in 1754. I have brought with me a tenor recorder which I bought in Chester. It is in the key of C, and bears the name of *Stannby, Junr.*, and must have been made, therefore, about 1750. I should doubt if there were many made after that date.

The music for recorders was, I believe, of a very simple character, and confined, more or less, to an octave of notes. Smoothness could only be obtained by cross-fingering, and notes beyond the octave could only be obtained by "pinching." The following directions for this are given in Salter's "General Companion; or, exact directions for the Recorder," 1684:—

"Your pinching notes sound higher than the plain notes. . . You must bend your left thumb and let it be half over

* Messrs. Goss, of Edinburgh, have two recorders: a Tenor, in C, 15½ in long and a Bass, in F, 15½ in long. Myer's name, *Essex*. The first instrument is very similar to the Chester Bass.

the hole underneath the Pipe, for that belongs to the upper line where the pinch is made, and pinch the end of your thumb in the hole, then blow your Recorder a little stronger than you did when you played the other notes, and you shall find the Recorder sound eight notes higher."

Mersenne, in his "*Harmonie Universelle*," published in 1636, gives several compositions for *flûtes-a-bec*, but they are all of a simple character.

There were several methods of writing for the recorder, but in all cases the stopping of the holes by the fingers is represented by black dots placed upon a series of lines varying from 6 to 8. A line through the dot • showed a "pinched" note.

In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries they were undoubtedly looked upon as choice and expensive instruments, and were distinctly under Royal patronage, for Henry VII. bought recorders and rewarded players on them, and the inventory of Henry VIII.'s wardrobe, taken after his death, shows that he possessed 232 flutes, of which seventy six were recorders, and we know that in his lifetime he amused himself daily by "playing at the recorders, flutes, virginals, in setting of songs and making of ballads."

At the beginning of the seventeenth century the instrument began to be more universally used, though the following well known quotation from "*Hamlet*" shows that it was not a common instrument up to that period —

"Re-enter Players, with recorders."

"*Hamlet*.—O the recorders! let me see one. (Then turning to Guildenstern he says) Will you play upon this pipe?

"*Guildenstern*.—My lord, I cannot.

"*Hamlet*.—I pray you.

"*Guildenstern*.—Believe me, I cannot.

"*Hamlet*.—I do beseech you.

"*Guildenstern*.—I know no touch of it, my lord.

"*Hamlet*.—This is easy as lying! govern these ventages with your fingers and thumb, give it breath with your mouth, and it will discourse most eloquent music. Look you, there are the stops."

In Charles I.'s time, the King's band consisted of eight hautboys, six flutes, and six recorders.

Pepys records with delight how he purchased a recorder, "the sound of it being most pleasing" to him.

Evelyn, in his diary 1694, says: "They are now much in request for accompanying the voice," and several instruction books appeared about that period. In one of them, "*The Gentil Comperce*," published in 1689, we read in the Preface: "Of the kinds of music vocal has always had the

preference in esteem, and by consequence the recorder (as approaching nearest to the sweet delightfulness of the voice) ought to have the first place in opinion, as we see by the universal use of it confirmed."

As time went on we find recorders were changed in name to "flutes and recorders," then to "flutes," and finally to the "common flute." As if unable to survive this degradation it died about 1790, to be succeeded by the so-called German flute.

Although treble recorders were made as late, say, as 1790, I believe that bass recorders had died out long before.

In July, 1770, Barney, the historian, was at Antwerp.* "After this I went to a very large building on a quay, at the side branch of the Scheldt, which is called the 'Grooten Hays,' or 'Hamerlings House,' it was formerly used as a warehouse by the merchants trading to Lubeck, Hamburg, and the Hanseatic towns, it is a very handsome structure, and has served, in time of war, as a barracks for two thousand men.

"I think not have mentioned my visiting this building if I had not found in it a large quantity of musical instruments of a peculiar construction. These are between thirty and forty of the common flute kind, but differing in some particulars, having, as they increase in length, keys and crooks, like hautbois and bassoons; they were made at Hamburg, and are all of one sort of wood and of one maker—Casper Rausch Spratzenbach was engraved on a brass ring or plate, which encircled most of these instruments. The larger ones have brass plates pinned, and some with human figures well engraved on them; these last are larger than a bassoon would be, if unfilled. The inhabitants say that it is more than a hundred years since these instruments were used, and that there is no musician, at present in the town, who knows how to play on any one of them, so they are quite different from those now in common use. In times when commerce flourished in this city these instruments used to be played on every day by a band of musicians who attended the merchants trading to the Hans towns, in procession to the Exchange; they now hang on pegs in a closet, or rather press, with folding doors, made on purpose for their reception; though in the Great Hall there still lies on the floor, by them, a large single case made of a heavy and solid dark kind of wood, so contrived as to be capable of receiving them all; but which, when filled with these instruments, requires eight men to lift it from the ground; it was of so enormous a shape that I was unable to derive its use, till I was told it."†

* This passage has already been quoted by Mr. Webb, but I repeat it as it is such an important piece of evidence as to the shape of the recorder.

† "Present State of Music in Germany"—Barney, Vol. I., page 21.

No doubt the best was of the shape found at Chester, but much larger. Now had Barny possessed any real antiquarian zeal or knowledge, what a prize was there! But it is evident that he was absolutely ignorant of recorders. He knew the small ones were "common futes," but he evidently had never seen or heard of bass or double-bass recorders, nor had he the wit to see that these were uncommon futes. Of all that set, I believe only one survives—in the Museum at Antwerp. It goes down to D below the bass staff. This instrument is unique.

In 1790 we find Malone commenting, in his edition of Shakespeare, on the quotation from "*Hamlet*" (of which there are different readings), and wondering what a recorder was like, and whether it had a thumb hole at the back or not. These facts point to the conclusion that the big "recorder" futes were quite unknown in the middle of last century, and, by the end of the century, the whole family had died out.

And now as to the word "recorder." The verb "to record" has in our present day only the meaning of "to remember," or "take note of"; but in earlier times it had another and very different meaning. It meant "to sing, chant, or warble like birds." "To record," says an old writer, "among fowlers, is when the bird begins to tuss or sing within itself." We find the verb "to record" used in this sense frequently by the poets. Nicholas Buxton, a pastoral poet of the Elizabethan era, says—

"Sweet Phalomen, the bird
That hath the heavenly throat
Doth now, she! not once afford
Sounding of a note."

Again, Thomas Watson, in "*England's Helicon*," says—

"Now birds record new Harmonies,
And trees do whistle melodies,
Now every thing that nature breeds
Doth chide itself in pleasant weeds."

Of course, we find the instrument in Shakespeare. In "*Pericles*," Act IV. 2—

"To the lute
She sang, and made the night bird mate
That still records with moan."

Again, in "*The Midsummer Night's Dream*," he says—

"He hath played on his prologues
Like a child on a Recorder."

Again, in "Two Gentlemen of Verona," scene iv.:-

"And to the nightingale's complaining notes
Tune my distress and record my woes."

There is one other celebrated passage in "Humber" which I have already quoted.

Philip Sidney describes her—"the shepherds, pulling out recorders, which possessed the place of pipes, accorded their music to the other's voice."

Hilcon, in "Paradise Lost," speaks of—

"The Dorian Mood
Of Flutes and soft Recorders."

We see here, then, that the wood recorder and flute are used side by side from a very early period, and Mr. Welch considers that he has traced the word "recorder" up to the middle of the fourteenth century, and that the word "recorder" is of English growth, while "flute" came over with William the Conqueror. However this may be, it is evident there must have been some difference between recorders and flutes to justify the different nomenclature. Woe to the unfortunate student who seeks that knowledge in ordinary books of musical reference. He will find there a statement, repeated again and again, to this effect: that there was in the upper part of the instrument between the top-hole for the fingers and the mouthpiece a special hole covered with a piece of bladder or goldbeater's skin, which gave to the instrument a distinct quality of tone, and that the name "recorder" was derived from this peculiarity of construction. The late Dr. Stone, in his article on the recorder in *Green's Dictionary*, says:-

- (1.) That a book published on the recorder in 1683 describes this peculiarity, and that Mr. Chappell thought the name was derived from it.
- (2.) That Mr. Chappell quoted the late Mr. Ward as having seen "old English flutes" bored through the side in the upper part of the instrument, and
- (3.) That there is at South Kensington a sixteenth century recorder with such a hole.

With regard to No. 2, let me say that there is not one word in the book published in 1683 about this hole covered with membrane, nor in any other known work on the recorder, nor is there any sign of such a hole in any one of the illustrations of these instruments which have come down to us.

2. That this evidence is much stronger than Mr. Ward's memory, however good that may have been.

3. That Mr. Welch has examined the so-called sixteenth century recorder, and finds it to have been made in London.

about the year 1810. It has a small hole covered with skin, which does not affect the sound in the least, and was perhaps put there as an experiment.

There is nothing new to a Chinaman. In the *Pictorial Magazine* for July, 1820, a Mr. Barcott mentions buying a Chinese flute in San Francisco, which had an aperture between the embouchure and the finger-holes. The stopper was used to fill a piece of skin in order to give a nasal tone.

Marsenne, in his *Harmonie Universelle*, published in 1686, describes many kinds of recorders and flutes, and in one case seems to suggest a similar sort of experiment, and I fancy that that is the basis for the gurgling fiction I have mentioned.

It is generally considered that flutes-a-bec were called recorders when pierced with eight holes—seven in front for the fingers and one at the back for the thumb. Undoubtedly the hole at the back was the most important feature.

I am myself inclined to think the treble instruments were oftentimes merely called flutes, and the larger instruments and those made in sets, recorders.*

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—Ladies and gentlemen, it is against my own will (although, of course, it is a pleasure for me to seem to support my brother) that I consented to occupy this chair. It was my wish that no great an authority on these matters as Mr. Welch should preside to-day; but he obstinately refused, so I consented to perform the necessary duties of a chairman. It is gratifying to me that my brother has come all the way from Chester to bring these most interesting instruments before the Association. I think it is a worthy example to every member of our profession who may have some special opportunities for acquiring information. Nothing gives us so much pleasure as to see those who can lend a little variety to our proceedings. My brother, and those who helped him, have shown great pluck in bringing these four instruments—or rather not so much in bringing them as in trying to play on them. Of course it would be ridiculous to say that we in London have never heard anything like it. I have no doubt that if he could have brought his own Chester quartet up things would have gone a little smoother, though perhaps we

* Granted by Hans Le Jeune, 1874. Quartet for four recorders, J. C. Bridge; and Duet for treble and bass recorders, were played upon the set of instruments belonging to and exhibited by the Chester Anthropometrical Society. The performers were the Rev. J. L. Bedford, Mr. Ratcliffe, Mr. Fox, and Dr. J. C. Bridge.

should have missed some of the excitement and curiosity as to how they would have got through it. I suppose most of us have not had an opportunity of hearing recorders before, and I think our throats are particularly due to those gentlemen who have come forward at the last moment, Mr. Radcliff, Mr. Foss, and Mr. Bedford, who comes from Chester and plays on the piboca.

Mr. Water.—I should like to ask Dr. Bridggs a question. What is the pitch of these instruments? Are they flat like the French pitch, or *diapason normal*, as it is called, or do they correspond to the Philharmonic or English concert pitch?

Dr. Bridggs.—They are pretty high—above the French, up to the Philharmonic pitch.

Mr. Water.—I am not surprised at the answer, for the evidence of flutes goes to show that the instrument, as often repeated, that there was a great rise in the English pitch during the first half of the nineteenth century, cannot be sustained. I will mention another case. Mr. Radcliff has in his possession a fipple flute—or *flute-a-vois*, to use its French name—made by an English maker, which is quite up to concert pitch. So surprising does this circumstance seem to those who believe the high pitch to be of modern growth, that the suggestion has been made that it must have been shortened to bring it up to the standard with which it was played, it having been used half-a-century ago by the late Mr. Richard Carré in illustrating his lectures on the flute. An examination of the instrument, however, fails to reveal any indication of it having been cut. Now no one can suspect that the flutes before us have ever been tampered with; yet they are at the same pitch. They are most precious, for although single specimens of fipple flutes are not uncommon, a complete set, a diatonic, alto, tenor, and bass, is of the greatest rarity. It is true that they would be more valuable still if they could be traced back to the time of Henry VIII. There is, however, so far as I know, only one set in the world, that of Nuremberg, mentioned by Dr. Bridggs, which dates from the sixteenth century. The Chester set, however, is complete, whereas one of the instruments, the smallest, is missing from the Nuremberg set; but the case, which has been preserved, is so constructed as to show the exact length and size of the missing instrument, so that there has been no difficulty in reproducing it. There seems to be some uncertainty about the kind of wood of which the Chester flutes are made. In a description of them which Mr. Newstead, the Curator of the Museum, was so good as to send me some time ago, he mentioned that an expert, a joiner, to whom they had been submitted, pronounced the wood to be red cedar. Their dark colour, however, is due evidently to a stain, the wood

black, when it is uncoloured, looks very much like bone. Perhaps there may be some one present qualified to judge who will give us his opinion.

Mr. STURGES (after examining one of the instruments).—They do not seem heavy enough for bone.

Dr. J. C. BARON.—I am no expert in wood, but several experts have seen these instruments and they say they are made of cedar. The ivory is very beautiful, and this must have been an expensive instrument, because the ivory is cut from a solid block. I ought to say we do not really know where these came from. A well-known Chester antiquary had a fine collection that they were given to the Archaeological Society by a Colonel Cholmondeley. At Cholmondeley Castle, which is not far from Chester, there is a private chapel, and it struck me they may have been used there, and being in course of time damaged they were given away. But this is simply conjecture. With regard to the wood that is all I can tell you.

Mr. WATSON.—I had hoped that Dr. Bridge would say something about Handel and the flute. Very few amongst us have heard a bass flute until now, yet the bass flute was used in the orchestra as late as Handel's time. Handel employed not only the bass transverse flute, the *traversa* flute, as he terms it, but the English bass flute—the bass recorder I had almost said; but I must not call it a recorder, for, when Handel wrote, it was no longer known by that appellation. By one of the strange mutations of nomenclature with which students of the history of musical instruments are familiar, the recorder, just as the seventeenth century was drawing to a close, changed its name to that of the flute. So rapidly and completely did the word recorder drop out of use that, by the middle of the eighteenth century, writers were in doubt as to what instrument a recorder was. Even as late as 1882, when Dr. Scott wrote the article on the recorder in Grove's Dictionary, the precise nature of the recorder was still a mystery. But since it has been shown that recorder was only an old name for the English flute, it is not uncommon for the owners of eighteenth century English flutes, which they had previously called *flutes à bec*, to speak of them as recorders. This is to be regretted, for, by so naming them, they create a false impression, similar to that which would be produced if a trombone were shown to the uninitiated as a sackbut, giving rise to a misconception, and indirectly claiming for their instruments a higher antiquity than that to which they are entitled. But I am wandering away from Handel. I was about to say that Handel wrote not only for the transverse, German, or lip flute now in daily use amongst us, but also for the straight, English, or fipple flute which we have just had the privilege of hearing. I should mention that

the fipple, which gives its name to the instrument, is the flag, or ligand, as an organ builder would style it, which partially blocks the tube. Handel calls the fipple flute *flauto*, the lip-flute *traversa*, namely *flauto traversa*. He is very particular in distinguishing between the two instruments, so that we always know, if we refer to the German Handel Society's edition of his works, on which of them he intends a passage to be played. He sometimes scores for at least four or five fipple flutes; but we should bear in mind that formerly these players were expected to occasionally take the flute. The nearest approach with which I am acquainted to Handel's works to the harmony we have heard this afternoon is to be found in the opera "Giustino." The music, which is in three parts, is scored for *Flauto I.*, *Flauto II.*, and *Flauto de' Bassi*. There were thus not less than five fipple flutes, four violins and a bass, playing together. The flute colour, it is true, was not quite pure like that brought before us to-day, for there was an echo in unison with the first flute, and a viola with the bass flute. The passage forms the introduction to a song sung by Giustino just before he falls asleep and dreams a dream in which the Goddess of Fortune appears and reveals to him his destiny. I hope on a future occasion to submit for your consideration an attempt to explain why Handel chose the peculiar scoring for the situation.

Dr. Hanson.—What was the lowest note played by the bass flute?

Mr. Warren.—I cannot say with certainty, it being some years since I saw the score, but if I can trust my memory, it was F. Another instrument of the fipple flute family used by Handel was the *flauto piccolo*. The piccolo with which we are familiar is a *traversa piccolo*, not a *flauto piccolo*. In connection with the *flauto piccolo* there is a question of interest to musicians. The obbligato to 'O ruddier than the cherry,' which, according to the score, should be played on a *flauto* or fipple flute, is played in the present day, not on the flute, but on the piccolo. What is the reason? Was the word *piccolo* accidentally omitted in the score? or could Handel, when writing 'Acte and Gulstan,' have designed the obbligato for the *flauto*, but afterwards changed his mind, and, in practice, caused it to be played on the *flauto piccolo*? A *flauto piccolo* was used for the obbligato at the Ancient Concerts. On this point the evidence is unquestionable. Mr. John Ellis, who joined the band nearly eighty years ago, mentioned to me more than once that when 'O ruddier than the cherry' was sung, the second flute player, a Mr. Sharp, used to play the obbligato on a *flauto*. The Concerts of Ancient Music were established within twenty years of Handel's death. The first conductor was Jash Bates; he was succeeded by

Greensox, who was still conducting when Mr. Ellis played in the band. Why, then, was not the oblige given to the flute, or the piccolo? Why did Greensox have it played on the flageolet, which had ceased to be an orchestral instrument? An answer which suggests itself in the absence of information is that he was acting in deference to a cherished tradition.

Dr. Buzon.—Were the piccolo players competent?

Mr. Welch.—I know no reason why they should not have been.

The Chairman.—I think we should convey the best thanks of the meeting to my brother, who has been so kind as to come down, and also to the gentlemen who have assisted him with the illustrations.

(The votes of thanks were then passed unanimously.)

MARCH 15, 1891.

A. H. D. FRENDEKAST, Esq.,

IN THE CHAIR.

A SEVENTEENTH CENTURY VIEW OF MUSICAL
EDUCATION.

By Sir FRANCIS BRADEN, M.D.

THE object of the short paper which I have promised to read to-night is to consider certain opinions upon "Music, and its importance in Education" found in the autobiography of a famous seventeenth-century dilettante, the Hon. Roger North. It will, I hope, interest you to hear what has been written upon this subject by a clever and acute observer over two years ago, particularly upon the subject of "Music in the home," and as a factor in "Education." It is, no doubt, of the utmost importance that the young should be encouraged to study music, and that, through them, the music of the home should be influenced in the right direction. Who can estimate the value of music in the family circle? You will hear in the course of my address how much this old seventeenth-century amateur, Roger North, thought of home music. Let me remind you of what Shakespeare thought of it. I quote from one of his sonnets,—

"Mark how one string, sweet husband to another,
Singles each in each by mutual ordering,
Resembling sire and child and happy mother,
Who all in one, one pleasing note do sing."

To turn now to the autobiography of Roger North, from which I have taken the bulk of my paper. Some of you may wonder who the Hon. Roger North was.

I will endeavour in as short a space as I can to give you some information, because he is an interesting and entertaining man, a man whose family occupied a great position in the history of England for many generations.

The Norths sprang from a merchant of London. The son of this merchant was raised to the peerage, and died in the Charterhouse in 1584, leaving two sons. The youngest, Sir Thomas North, was the translator of "Plutarch's Lives."

a book from whose pages Shakespeare drew some of his inspiration; and Roger, his heir, was a great man at the court of Elizabeth. He also died in his house at London, called the Chamberhouse, in 1600. His son and heir was killed in 1597, during the wars in the Netherlands, leaving behind him one Dudley, who became third Lord North in 1600, whilst still a minor. He enjoyed his title and estates for sixty-six years, maintained great state at the court of James I., and during that time did much to improve himself and his successors. On the accession of Charles I. he retired to his country seat at Kirtling, Norfolk, living in retirement for forty years. He died in 1668, in his eighty-seventh year. We shall here mean of this old peer, who was a very remarkable man, and, what more especially interests us, an enthusiastic musician. To him succeeded Dudley, fourth baron, the father of some very clever sons, with the youngest of whom, Roger, we, this afternoon, are the more particularly concerned. It may however interest you to hear that Charles, the heir, was one of those who rushed in the first to welcome Charles II. at the Restoration, and he made a very favourable impression upon Pappa (another amateur musician), who was much struck by his skill as a musician, recording that "not right he did play his part exceeding well at first sight." Francis, the second son, became Lord Keeper of the Great Seal.

The old lord, the grandfather of Roger, lived, as I explained, in retirement for many years. He was a man strong of will, and insisted upon his son and his grandchildren residing principally at Kirtling with him. This magnificent mansion, which was seized by the first lord, was in its glory at this time. It contained a splendid collection of pictures, and was the home of music; the old lord being, as we have already heard, an enthusiastic musician. Roger North and his brothers (it has been well said by Dr. Jessop, the accomplished editor of the biography) were from their childhood educated in a school of art, both eye and ear trained from infancy. Roger and his brother, the Lord Keeper, were great favourites of James II., and Roger at a very early age became Attorney-General. At the breaking out of the Revolution he retired from public life, and though he lived until 1734 he never took the oath of allegiance to the new régime; at the same time he was no conspirator. He lived a quiet, happy life in the country, devoting himself to the pursuits of the country gentleman, and his favourite studies he tells us were mathematics and music. We have his notions on music set out at great length in his autobiography, and more especially interesting for us is his reference to music and its importance in education.

To turn to this work, I will ask you first to remember that it was written possibly one year ago, during the reign of William and Mary, about the time of Purcell's death (in 1695) and before the arrival of Handel.

Roger North was a very remarkable link between two different periods of music. He was a pupil of John Jenkins, who was born in 1602, when viola was supreme and the violin was practically unknown to the English musician. North lived until 1730—that is, until nearly a quarter of a century after the appearance of Handel in this country. The musical traditions and methods of his old master, Jenkins, must have been a strange contrast to the works of Handel which he saw, and heard produced. Our author begins by mentioning that his grandfather, Lord North, "having travelled in Italy, where music is queen, took a liking to it, and when his vanities and appendant wants had driven him into the country, his active spirit found employment with many dry entertainments as poetry," &c. You must remember this was the age of the madrigal—the end of the sixteenth century. "Thus his poetry called him to music, for he would have the masters set his phrases, and then his grandchildren, my sisters, must sing them. He played on that antiquated instrument called the treble viol, now abrogated wholly by the use of the violin" (that was of course at the end of the next century), "and he kept an organ in his house, which was seldom without a professed music-master." John Jenkins was one of the private musicians to the house. Before that he had another organist named Locomore. He goes on to say: "And the servants of parade and the steward and clerk of the kitchen also played, being a musical household, which with the young ladies" (my sisters) "singing made a society of music such as was well entertained in those times. And the course of the family was to have solemn music three days in the week, and often every day as music supplied novelties for the entertainment of the old lord. And on Sunday night voices to the organ were a constant practice, and at other times symphonies joined with the instruments." Of course I need not say he is not referring to the modern symphony.

Truly Roger North was educated in a place where music and its power for good were thoroughly appreciated.

He goes on to tell us that "the old lord took a fancy to a wood about a mile from his house, where he would converse his musical family, and songs were made and set for celebrating the joys there. The concerts were usually all viola to the organ or harpsichord." "The violin," he added, "came to later, and imperfectly." "When the funds were well supplied, then a whole chest went to work—that is, six viola—the mass being formed for it, which would form a strange sort of music now, being an interwoven bandura

compared with the *brisk Ballets* derived from the French and Italian."

Roger North was speaking of the time when the French and Italian music had begun to exercise a great influence in this country—after Charles II., and at the end of that century. It was then he was writing, and he was comparing the music then fashionable in England with the music of the older time. "This *brisk, airy accent*" of the Italian music was a very different thing from the old *viol consors*—"interwoven handman," as Roger has it.

North next proceeds to lament that the improvements of music have caused it to be less cultivated by amateurs in the country. He complains that "when music was kept in an easy and temperate air, practicable to moderate and imperfect hands, it might be retained in the country; but since it has arrived at such a pitch of perfection that even masters unless of the prime cannot entertain us, the plain way becomes ridiculous and contemptuous, and therefore must needs be laid aside." You see he was speaking of the old, quiet days of the amateur music. He took a pleasure in domestic music, and, that being so, he lamented any tendency to see music become merely "professional"—to be paid for, and not practised as a delight of the home. His quantity suggests that "if the home cultivation of music be neglected, vice will start up and fill the vacancy," adding, "What we know not how to pass the time we fall to drink!" So disturbed is the old amateur by the neglect of home music for the more advanced public performances, that he adds: "I am almost of Plato's opinion that the State ought to govern the use of it." His description of a London concert of the period is truly amusing and a clever piece of criticism. One would think he had been to a modern ballad concert!

"And thus it is," he says, "with the music exhibited in London publicly for halfpence. A combination of masters agree to make a concert, as they call it, but do not submit to the government of anyone." (That is, they have no conductor—they see all conductors—we see that at some of our concerts nowadays). "And in the performance each man takes his part according as his opinion of his own excellence. The master *violin* must have his solo—then joined with a lute, then a fiddle or concert, then a song, then the trumpet and hautbois, and so other variety as it happens—and upon every piece ended, the masters shift their places to make way for the next. And the company know not whether all is ended or whether anything more is to come, and what which passes, and delivers accidental species of music presented one after the other without judgement or design, are as defective as justly to be compared to a ballad singer, who having done one ballad, begins another to a pleasant

new tune. But this combination, regulated, might exhibit very good music, for the parts forwardness of some, or rather of all the masters would be restrained, and they obliged to take the parts designed, and to stick to them, without pushing forward to show their parts and please themselves in being admired." Then he goes on with a very interesting suggestion that "the whole should be of a piece, and all the pieces of it considered and put together with skill and design, to give advantage to each part, and never let the audience cease attention, but continually improve and raise it until the end."

The next observation seems to be almost prophetic: "Such an entertainment I never heard composed for so hour's pastime, which is enough, but my knowledge of the art tells me it should be so." What would Roger North have said if he had heard Beethoven's symphonies? We are quite sure he would have been a good listener, but his description of what a musical entertainment ought to be, is, as I have just said, truly prophetic. His next paragraph is devoted to the advice that all young people should be performers of music. He recommends it on the ground of its being a pleasure in mere action, a pleasure in doing something. "Just as boys," he adds, "will not walk on the ground if a rail be near, but they must walk on the top of that, or if a nail is to be driven, and two or three stand by, each has a mind he would be pleased to do it. Therefore it must be allowed that action itself is a pleasure. But gentlemen seeing the performance of the masters are very desirous to do the same, and finding the difficulty and the pain that are requisite to acquire it, are discouraged in the whole matter and try it not." He tells Lord of London again, saying, "which is chiefly to be ascribed to the town, which is the home of all industry, because many other pleasures stand with open arms to receive them. Music is especially desired in the country, where there are not such varieties of gay things to call young folks away, for nothing," he adds, "can be so good as music, which is a kind companion and admits all to its graces. I would not have people, that is, ladies, discouraged for want of perfection; but after all nothing of music is so mean or ill-performed which is not commendable and extremely useful in a country family."

The subject of teaching music next occupies attention. He certainly seems anxious to cover the whole ground while he is about it. He recommends men to study the viol, viols, and organ, and harpsichord, and double bass. For women he recommends the spinnet and harpsichord, the lute, and the guitar. I wonder if he would approve of ladies playing the violin, as they now do so admirably. I do not know if he would object to it on the same ground that he objects to their

playing the lute—"Inasmuch as playing the lute tends to make ladies cross'd!" Then as to the teachers, he recommends the older rather than the younger, although, he adds, "the latter may be the more agreeable for novelty and briskness, which is an advantage in most things, especially music;" his reason being that "the older are better masters of teaching the principles of music, having more experience." He adds, "first get a teacher who understands and has experience in teaching, which is a distinct art from playing." Here North shows much common sense. We all agree with him in the extreme importance of careful, conscientious, and experienced teaching. How many have to undo the sad errors which a careless, inexperienced teacher has passed on! I am convinced that in nothing in England have we made greater progress than in the good teaching which now is to be obtained by all who seek for it. With regard to the pupils themselves, Roger North says, "Beginners in music should be trained as in manufacturing and trades, first taught to provide the material, then put it together, and lastly finish it. In music the material is raised, which may be well or ill, and this difference in the first formation of it is of the greatest importance. Good drugs are not more considerable in medicine, than the producing a good sound in music. It is the substance and foundation, which failing, all fails."

The last piece of advice which this worthy old *diatensis* gives is that scholars should be taught harmony. "Some," he says, "have not a nature capable of it, which is soon discovered; and I have known those who could neither understand a perspective draught to represent anything, nor mixture of sounds to contain anything more than a jumble or confusion of noises. These are to be oblig'd to other business—they are not cut out for arts!" The concluding words of his observations on the importance of music in education are both melancholy and amusing. "How little these methods are pursued is rather a subject to lament than of hope to reform. Ladies hear a new song and are impatient to learn it. A master is sent for who sings it as to a parrot, ill at last with infinite difficulty the tune is got, but with such infantine, imperfect, say abominable guesses, in imitation of the good that one would split to hear it."

And here I must finish my quotations from this interesting old author. Much of what he complained is true at the present time, and this being so, I do not apologise for making his remarks the basis of my paper. His observations are couched in old-fashioned phraseology, but possibly are so all the more telling. Who does not remember some of the quaint observations of that acute critic and lover of music, a contemporary of Roger North, Mr. Samuel Pepys, all the better for the quaint way in which he puts things? He was

an ardent a lover and student of music as Roger North—so much did he appreciate its value that he had his servants taught, and even taught them himself. Do you remember the somewhat serious episode (in which Mr. Pyppe appears to me almost to have been the original Cordie) when the Doctor tells us, "Hence and to sing with my wife and Master (Mrs. Pyppe's maid) in the garden; and scoring in, I had my wife plainly dissatisfied with me, that I can spend so much time with Mervin, teaching her to sing, and could never take the pains with her. Which I acknowledge, but it is because that the girl do take music mightly readily, and she do not; and music is the thing of the world that I love most, and all the pleasure almost that I now take. So to bed in some little discontent, but no words from me." And do you remember his observations on the singing of a young lady, who possibly had been taught in the way Roger North describes—

"After supper late to sing; but Lord! how did I please myself to make Betty Turner sing, to see what a beast she is as to singing, not knowing how to sing one note in tune; but, only for the experiment, I would not for 400. hear her sing a tune worse than my wife a thousand times, so that it do a little reconcile me to her."

I cannot longer detain you—as fact, I fear I have already transgressed upon your patience. Let me express the hope that we all sympathize with the ardent aspirations of old Roger North, and look upon music as an important branch of education.

The time has gone by when the Professor of Philosophy could say to the musician (as in the "Teasing of the School"), "Fiddler, forbear, you grow too forward Sir."

We musicians and lovers of music must claim for it its rightful place in education, and, to those who would object to the claim, reply also in the words of Shakespeare—

"Wrangling Pedant"

This is the patroness of heavenly harmony;
Then give me leave to have prerogative,
And when in music we have spent an hour,
Your lecture shall have leisure for an hour."

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—Ladies and gentlemen, we have had a short paper, but an extremely interesting one, from Sir Frederick Bridge. I hope that some of you will contribute a few observations on the subject, which belongs to an historical period in the life of poetry and music. The seventeenth century was a time when the dramatic entertainments called masques were at the height of popularity, and when even such seats of learning as the Inns of Court devoted much time and money to them. The Benchers of those days compelled the law students to work also at masques and dancing and singing. In Writlock's *Annals* of his time (seventeenth century), it is recorded that *Shirley's masque*, entitled "The Triumph of Peace," was performed at Whitehall Palace by members of the four Inns of Court, at a total cost of nearly £30,000—an enormous sum considering the comparative value of money in those days. I hope someone has a few observations to make on this very interesting period of musical history.

MR. BOWENANT.—I would make one observation on this interesting paper, and that is with regard to Jenkins. I think we have passed by old Jenkins with some courtesy. Sir Frederick quotes Hall's statement that he wrote cartloads of music and none has survived. But in Hall's valuable little book on the Transition Period, if I remember rightly, he gives a very remarkable Title for style by Jenkins, which I have always looked on as an extraordinarily early specimen of free part-writing. It consists of three movements, and I think the last is in the legal style on a chromatic subject. Indeed, I believe Sir Frederick Bridge has given us that very piece at one of his lectures. Jenkins was so popular that his music was frequently asked for on the Continent, and merchants who traded there were not infrequently requested to send some music of Jenkins. In the Bodleian Library there are many compositions of Jenkins for viola. I have copied out some few of them. There is one composition I have for four viols with an independent organ part. I mention these works of the old English worky, because it seems that Jenkins inaugurated a style of composition that has been successfully followed elsewhere. After he left Sir Roger North's he went into the Wedelhouse household, where he lived for many years, and died in their service. Somebody told me that his tombstone, in Kimberley churchyard, was sadly neglected. I mentioned this to Sir Frederick Gore Crossley, who suggested I should write to Lord Kimberley on the subject, and he replied "Yes, we know the name of Jenkins in this part of the world, and

possibly you will like to hear that I have had the name engraved on his monument at my own expense."

Mr J. S. SACRODICE.—I would only say with reference to the remarks made that we need not go so far as the Bodleian Library to find music by Jenkins. There is a great deal of it not very far from this spot. I think we have a very interesting specimen of house music in the Bach family—not only that of J. S. Bach, but of his predecessors and ancestors, I think that is a very notable illustration of family music. As Sir Frederick Bridge remarked, there is nothing much to argue about in his paper, I have only to add my thanks for it.

Dr. MACLEAN.—Bach's connection with Minder's Association for Musical Science is somewhat in point here. Minder tried for a very long time without success to secure Bach as a member, till one day, three years before his death, Bach wrote a triple canon in six parts much to his own satisfaction, and he thereon sent it in and enrolled himself. Seriously, I think a subject having pleased Sir Frederick Bridge, he has thereof broken his long silence, to our advantage. The subject of this old English music is far too much agreed, and I say so in an antiquarian spirit. Last year I was at a performance in St. James's Hall, where there were some hundreds present, and just half-a-dozen violins on the platform. The latter played some English music belonging exactly to the period referred to by the lecturer, and I can only say that it held the audience and sounded completely beautiful. North talks of the "interweaves harmonium." I dissent to the "harmonium" (as we now understand that word), but the interweaving was certainly there. We are too much disposed to put our heads in the sand, and imagine there is no music except to-day's. To look backward as well as forward is necessary for getting the right perspective. It is to be hoped that this lecture will contribute to stimulate an interest in the admirably old English viol music. I have a small personal interest in the subject of the lecture, having been once at Raughara, the seat of Roger North's descendants, and having been also at Wroton, the seat of the North barony. The Norths are now country gentlemen, the family once took a very prominent part in English public life.

The CHAIRMAN.—With reference to Sir Frederick Bridge's remark that the violin was but little used at the commencement of the seventeenth century, it may be interesting to mention that in the *Libretto* of the "Masque of Flowers," written and produced in 1634, a list is given of the instruments used in the performance, amongst them being "A Treble Violin," which I should imagine to be one of the very earliest instances of the mention of the violin in a list of instruments.

Sir FRANCIS BACON.—Of course I would say that in reading this paper I only proposed to call your attention to the observations of this man, who has interested me very much since I have had time to devote to the archeological side of music, and not by any means to comment on the people with whom it is connected. With regard to Jenkins I do not yield to my friend Mr. Southgate in my admiration of him. His work is very often surprising in that particular point to which Mr. Southgate alluded—his use of the chromatic scale. There is one very beautiful trio that Jenkins wrote to celebrate the death of William Lawson. He gave up his place in the Abbey when he refused to sign the Solemn League and Covenant (his brother signed it, and kept his place), and in the Museum soon you see a very interesting note of "William Lawson in error against the Parliament." He went to Chester and was killed. If I had to give you a lecture on Jenkins, I could keep you for a couple of hours. There are many charming things you will find in those books edited by Playford. There is no doubt that he was a very excellent musician, and a man that could write real melody. And his tonality was so fixed. He wrote that Fancy to which Mr. Southgate referred more in the old mode; but he also wrote quite in the modern tonality. He wrote a piece anticipating the "Battle of Prague." It was called the "Battle of Newark," full of trumpets and drumming. I nearly spoilt one of Deane's piano once in a lecture trying to get out the effect of the trumpet. With regard to the Norths themselves, Dr. Madden has hardly done justice to the later members of the family. A very distinguished descendant of Roger was that very clever artist, Marian North, who painted these beautiful pictures of flowers in New Gardens. In one of her books she mentions her old ancestor, Roger. She says that she was writing under Roger's portrait, and that she could see him looking on her with approbation. I do not think there is anything else I have to comment on. You are all very kind in saying you liked my paper. I am glad of it. It was not very long, and I think that is a recommendation both in papers and sermons.

A vote of thanks to Sir Frederick Bridge closed the meeting.

APRIL 18, 1911.

DR. CHARLES W. PEARCE,
IN THE CHAIR.

THE AESTHETIC TREATMENT OF BACH'S
ORGAN MUSIC

By H. HASTINGS STATHAM.

If some apology is required from an amateur for offering some remarks on this subject to an audience partly, at least, composed of professional musicians, I may say that perhaps few persons can have given more time and thought to this particular subject than I have. For a good many years of my life the study and practice of Bach's organ compositions was my principal recreation, especially with the view of getting all the effect from them for which a modern organ affords the opportunity; and there are none of the larger and more important compositions which I have not tried over and over again, in various ways, with this object. The suggestions I have to make, therefore, are at all events not hastily arrived at.

Bach's organ compositions, which are so strangely neglected or ignored by many, even by those who consider themselves in a special sense worshippers of Bach, are, in fact, his central artistic work. As this is an unpopular opinion at present, I may cite two distinguished critical authorities in support of it. Spitta says:—

"Bach started from the organ and remained faithful to it to the last day of his life. All his productions in other departments—or at any rate all his sacred compositions—are merely an expansion and development of his organ music. This was to him the basis of all creation, the vivifying soul of every form he wrought out."

Sir Hubert Parry, in "The Art of Music," holds nearly the same language:—

"Bach's musical expression became merged in organ effects and the phrasing which was most appropriate to the instrument became the natural language for the expression of his musical ideas, and continued so for the rest of his life. Though inspired and enlarged by the wide range of his symphonic studies in every branch of composition."

To this it may be added that it is in organ music that Bach stands absolutely alone, not only with no rival, but no-second. As a choral writer, you may institute comparisons between

him and Handel, but there are no other organ compositions which can in any way be considered in the same category. He remains the supreme writer for the greatest of instruments.

It is to this pervading influence of the organ—the medium for excellence of strict and severe harmonic structure—that we may ascribe, in great measure, the closely knit structure and the great and serious style which pervades Bach's vocal compositions also. But it may be questioned whether this pervading influence of the organ was not without its drawbacks. It led to his writing for voices too much in the organ style, and more especially in regard to solo airs, he is deficient in melodic inspiration. The German organ of his day, which was without even that capacity for sustained expression afforded in modern organs by the swell, was rather calculated to stifle than to develop artistic sentiment; and his solo airs, in many cases at least, instead of being pure vocal expressions of melody supported by a subordinate accompaniment, have too much the effect of the voice being only an instrument in a contrapuntal scheme in which the accompaniment is of equal importance with the voice, and hampers its freedom of expression.

Before proceeding to consider the treatment of the organ works, I would make the strongest possible protest against the fashionable arrangement of some of them for the piano. In many cases not even the actual notes can be represented on the piano, because the playing of the bass on the pedals gives an opportunity for extended harmony beyond the compass of the two hands on the piano. In Liszt's arrangement of the G minor Fugue the proper movement of the parts in many passages interrupted or troped, and as to the pedals, there is so much Liszt in it that there is very little Bach left. It must be remembered that this is not like arranging from an orchestral score, where there is a great deal of reduplication of parts to be simplified, and where one has to represent the effect of string passages which cannot be played on the keyboard. In Bach's organ compositions there is no duplication of parts, every note is an essential feature; to alter it is to tamper with the composition. But neither can the effect be represented on the piano. Purdiss seems to think the "Little E minor" specially suited to the piano. But the finest passage in the Prelude, commencing—



is unrepresentable on the piano, because its effect depends entirely on the complete sustaining power of the organ in the melodic phrases, and the great mass of the answering chords. The first time I ever heard that passage played slowly on the "full organ" of a large instrument, it left on my mind an impression of sublimity never to be effaced; on the piano it is futile. The question of scale, too, comes in. The manner in which, in the same Prelude, the pedal passage, first heard in the form—



is at the close expanded into the form—



and which produces on a large organ such an extraordinary suggestion of vast space, has not the same effect on the piano. The idea is there, but the scale is wanting. It is like the model of a temple compared with the temple itself. So with the pedal cadence at the end of the *A minor Fugue*—terrible in its effect when thundered out on a large organ, on the piano it is a mere click in comparison—a poor imitation of the reality, paltry in scale and totally different in quality of tone. Many other instances might be cited to the same effect. If the public want to make the acquaintance of Bach's organ music let them hear it on the instrument for which it was written, and on which alone its grandeur can be realized.*

These styles are pretty easily to be recognized in the organ works, distinguished by internal evidence, apart from any known dates, of which dates appear to be few. The early style, founded on that of Bach's uncle and others of Bach's predecessors, is marked by a considerable use of brilliant passages in scales and aggregates, based on a comparatively simple harmonic structure; a typical example is the Prelude and Fugue in C, Vol. IV., No. 1,† a more important and

* For the enjoyment of hearing some of these compositions for orchestra there is better scope, but a very careful selection would have to be made in regard to the orchestra. The *Toccata in F*, an excellent arrangement of which was played in London not long since, was a most suitable choice: slow in character and gentle in its form the very first has emphatically defined music—and means by the long "draw bars" on the pedal, at the commencement, is an effect which only the organ can give.

† The references are to Peters' edition, as the best known and most widely used.

minor as an adequate portion to the stupendous Fugue which follows it, or as the effulging of the same musical mood? So with taste at least of the organ compositions. The most complete and homogeneous in style and feeling are perhaps the little E minor and the D major—the former the most pathetic, the latter the most brilliant, of all the organ compositions: in each of these cases the Prelude and Fugue represent one consistent phase of feeling from beginning to end. The same may be said of the Prelude and Fugue in G, Vol. II., and those in the same key in Vol. IV.; and in the case of the A minor and the great E minor the Preludes are worthy of and in keeping with the Fugues, though not so completely homogeneous in style as in the before-mentioned instances. But in the B minor Prelude and Fugue, the Dona Tocata and Fugue, and the F major Tocata and Fugue, the first movement belongs to an entirely different genre from the fugue which follows it; in the F major composition the Tocata, in fact, completely swamps the Fugue, which is an anticlimax, and I always think it better kept apart from the Tocata, which is complete in itself. Nor can I believe that the long and beautiful movement which Griepenkerl has placed as a Prelude to the "St. Ann's" Fugue was really written as such; it is a composition complete in itself, and I think of earlier date than the Fugue; there is more antithesis of style about it.

But the great point to bear in mind about these organ works of Bach is that the fugues are not to be regarded as mere examples of fugue, but as poetic conceptions—moods of musical feeling thrown into fugue form, because that was then considered the highest form of musical expression, just as in later days Beethoven threw his moods of feeling into sonata form. Spitta expresses this conviction very strongly in one passage in the biography—one cannot say he expresses himself very clearly (if he had he would not have been a German writer), but the passage is worth quoting in this connection, and is at all events picturesque:—

"We always seek justice the septent similes of an organ piece by Sebastian Bach, every smallest detail to its texture with vital purpose; but the so-called polyphonic treatment, which clothes the form Fugue's structure is but a beautiful drapery. It resembles a Gothic Cathedral, with its groups of towers that seem to quarrelsome growth, and its capitals enriched with flowers and leaves; they tall up in one line; the seeming of independent life, but they do not live, only the walls live in form. This radical distinction cannot be sufficiently insisted on; without a comprehension of it, the whole realm of organ music as an independent art, and all that has any connection with it, including the whole of Johannes Bach's work, cannot be understood."

Viewed in the light of this idea, it is obvious—or should be—that the method of execution of such works as these cannot be reduced to rule. The distance which one sometimes meets

with its lesson books, that all fugues should be commenced quietly and gradually strengthened up to the close, may be all very well for academic fugues of the school of Albrechtsberger, for instance, but is not to be applied to the conceptions of Bach when put into fugue form. Each claims its own treatment according to its own character and feeling.

There are, one may say, "episode" fugues and "climax" fugues. There are very few of Bach's organ fugues, however, which do not contain episodes that demand what one may call a *recessed* treatment—a throwing back from the front place of the composition. In the great E minor Fugue the whole middle portion of the fugue is of the character of an intermezzo, having little connection with the main subject of the fugue, and imperatively requiring a separate and what I have ventured to call a *recessed* treatment. I would, however, so far regard climax in this composition, which is really nearly the same fugue repeated before and after the intermezzo, that I would play the first presentation of the fugue on the full to 15th, the second and closing one on the full organ, the full power of the organ being obviously led up to by the passage at the close of the intermezzo. The Donic Fugue is, from its nature, essentially a "climax" fugue; it is commenced *sf* and gradually strengthened, at least as a whole; though there are two passages, on page 39 and page 45 (where the pedal part is dropped for a good many bars), which demand to be treated as episodes and recessed from the front place of the picture. On the other hand, if we take such a composition as the fine and too little played Fugue in C major (No. 8 of Vol. IV.), a perfectly different kind of treatment is called for. This is a double fugue in which a subject of very bold and dramatic character is first treated alone, then entirely dropped, and another subject of lighter and more graceful character is worked entirely alone; then, after a full close, the two appear in combination. This demands an entirely different treatment. It should be commenced in the boldest manner on the full organ; then the organ reduced to full to 15th for the lighter second subject; and as the treatment of this grows more and more light and playful as it proceeds, the organ should be gradually reduced, till at the passage—



we may make it a distinct *climax* on the *climax* manual or a *climax* *climax* on the *climax* manual. With the re-entrance of the

subject in the left hand commences a gradual *ritornale* (fall swell): then great *crescendo* to swell, still on the C at²⁶—

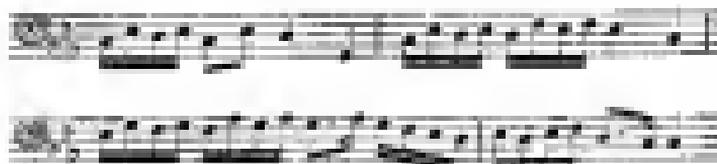


the fall organ is re-introduced for the cadence leading to the third part, where the two subjects are worked together on the fall organ up to the end. Then follows the rather *terrace* Code, at the close of which the last flat (the pedal) is dropped for the last bar and a half plainly points to a *diminuendo* and to ending quietly, not with the fall organ. In some such way, and by transition from loud to soft, or from one keyboard to another, must Bach himself have diversified the rendering of his own organ fugues. I cannot fancy that he, who showed such keen search after effect in orchestral writing, could either have ploughed through these works on the fall organ or have treated them all by a rigid rule, independently of their special character, that he did diversify the preludes we know absolutely, from the indications attached to the *Doric Toccata*; why are we to suppose that he attached less importance to light and shade in the fugues?²⁷

Beyond such sources of effect, which Bach himself may have employed and probably did employ, are we justified in attempting to introduce what may be called modern feeling for effect and expression into these compositions? I think it is an open question, on which no hard and fast rule can be made; such attempts must really be judged by their results. Best once tried an interesting experiment with the little E minor Fugue; he said it was an essentially pathetic composition, and should be treated as an *Adagio*, and I heard him play it so. I think it was a justifiable experiment, but it did not recommend itself to me, because I do not think it really suited the character of the composition, which, though it should be played slowly, requires a certain flow—the movement of a slow *Andante*. Another experiment of his,

²⁶ What did Bach mean by the indication "organo pleno" attached to the Prelude in E minor? Certainly not what we understand by "fall organ." Obviously he meant "all the organ — i.e., all the manuals, all other works, all the variety (if some possible), and the character of the composition mainly leads itself to this idea.

however, in new readings was telegraphically announced. This was with the short Fugue in C major, Vol. IV., where the pedal is not introduced till towards the end. This is generally passed over as a work of secondary interest; but it occurred to Best that the composition, both from the character of the theme—



and the introduction of the pedal at the close only, was susceptible of a playful treatment. Accordingly, it was commenced *pp* on the clear manual, and kept soft nearly all through, each new entry of the theme being made on a new stop, till just before the pedal entry there was a crescendo with both hands on the swell, and the pedal entered with a thundering fortissimo. The effect was splendid, and anyone who heard it must have felt that no other reading was possible afterwards. I adopted it with what I thought one improvement—viz, giving out the theme on a bassoon stop, which has a delightfully hoarse effect, and in fact the passage is just of the kind that you might fancy an orchestral writer giving to the bassoon. And I am inclined to think that Best had got at the secret of that fugue, and that it really was intended for playful treatment.*

In regard to some of the greater and more serious works, there is surely more interest to be made out of them for modern audiences, and more expression to be given to them, by seeking variety and delicacy of effect in contrasts of *forte* and *piano*, and of varieties of timbre, instead of the "straight-on" method of playing which seems generally to be considered orthodox. As an instance, I give what was my own usual treatment of the close of the Prelude to the A minor Fugue.

* An one of the speakers in the discussion seemed to imagine, because I referred two or three times in Best's readings, that my class on the technique of Bach's organ music were entirely divorced from Best's practice. I may observe that this was the only instance in which I ever adopted a reading from him. I consider him by far the greatest player of Bach's organ music I ever heard; his performance of the variations in the *Pavane*, the delicacy of certain *Andes* and perfect sustained passages, was a thing to remember all one's life after; and to be constantly hearing him was no doubt a kind of education in organ effect and handling. But all the suggestions made in this paper, with the above exception, are entirely my own.

The last pedal solo gives the opportunity for gradually reducing the power—

178 2, 3. Flute (Solo)
pp

Ck. 178 x 31

Ck. 178 x 31

at 31 only, good practice



If I am asked whether I think Bach played it or all in that way, I should say probably not; but that we cannot be sure, we have so little information to go on. We do know, however, from one of his reports as to an organ, that he was particular as to the *voix humaine* and *cornet* being properly made—therefore he was aware of your parish who desire those effects. What I am quite sure of is that that treatment of the conclusion of the *Preluda* has a lovely effect, and gives all the more force to the succeeding *bellandi* attack of the *Fugue*, and that a treatment of that kind increases the interest of the music to modern audiences. The question, why should we always end with a great noise? is equally applicable to some of the *fugues*. Many of the *fugues*, from the way the closing bars are written, obviously point to a *fortissimo* close, others do not. Take the *Fugue* in G, Vol. II., No. 2, which for the most part should not be loud—it is too delicate in its detail, and too widely spread in the part-writing to be roughly treated; to flounder through it on the full organ, as I have heard done, is a kind of sacrilege. We

can, however, rise to a bold *forte* for a few bars preceding the *rit.* mark, and end *ff* as that discord—



Then from that point to the close treat it as a long and gradual *diminuendo*, till those bars before the close we come to—



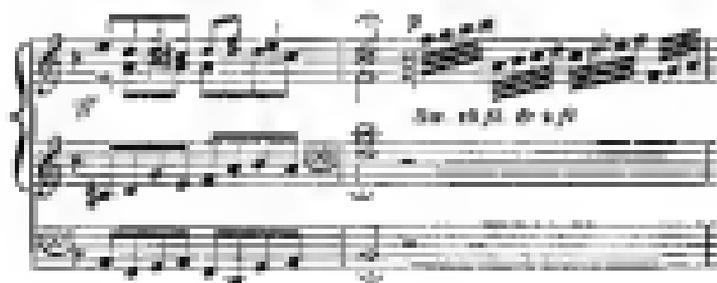
reducing it at the middle of the last bar but one to small *dissonance*, and ending the last lingering phrase *pp*. The effect of this is so lovely that I cannot imagine anyone who

has once played it in that way ever wishing to play it otherwise. An another instance of the effect of a *prestissimo* coding, I may mention the splendid set of three variations or versos on the chorale, "O Lamm Gottes unschuldig," where the last page, after the third verse in which the full power of the largest organ is demanded, is occupied by a long Code. Here again a most poetic effect may be produced by treating the Code, after the *canto fermo* is completed, in what we may call a diminishing perspective, softer and softer, till the closing bar, where the left hand is on the swell, and the concluding scale passage is played on a soft 8-ft. flue on the chor manual—like the distant flight of an eagle into the blue heaven—



An example of the poetry of effect to be obtained by special registering is afforded in a passage towards the end of the D minor Toccata (Vol. IV.), where, after a pause on a

half-close, *f*, occurs the light running passage, variously labelled — "Contraste" —



This is very noisily continued on the full organ, or perhaps on the full swell; but try it on the swell with borders and 15th, or (better) borders and pedals only, and see what a quaint and hysterical effect it has. The conclusion of this composition affords another example of the fallacy of always ending loud; the pathetic and gloomy character of the closing bars requires something different to that; the passage preceding the three final bars should be full to maximum; then end that—



the "doublets" on the great being retained to the end to give the gloomy coloring required. If the solo organ has more than one reed of the trumpet class, the one of least strength may be substituted for the small reeds.

A word in regard to speed. I think Bach's fugues are a good deal more often injured by being played too slow than too fast. There is evidence that Bach was a brilliant executant, and prided himself on his powers in this respect, and it was said of him that he could play as fast with his feet as others could with their hands. A great many of the fugues are full of dramatic effect and fire, and are not compositions to be dragged through in a severe and solemn manner. Bearing in mind what a prod of Bach's brilliant pedal-playing, the mere fact of the simplification of the theme in the pedal part, which we find sometimes, is significant enough. In the A minor Fugue, for instance, we have—

MANUAL 

PEDAL 

and in the second subject of the C minor Fugue (Vol. IV.)—

MANUAL 

PEDAL 

Unless the pace had been pretty brisk these simplifications of the pedal part would not have been necessary for Bach, and whether they were required for inferior players was a matter he would not have troubled his head about. The notion that his fugues are necessarily to be played slow, because they are fugues, is all a part of the radical error before referred to, of regarding them primarily as fugues, whereas they are primarily expressions of musical feeling.

and their legal form is the secondary and not the essential element. The A minor Fugue, in particular, is manifestly an *Alligre di brava*, cast into a very free fugal form, just as decidedly as the first movement of the "Waldstein" Sonata is an *Alligre di brava* cast into sonata form.

Whatever questions may be raised as to the propriety of imparting modern feeling into the rendering of Bach's music, there can be none as to the propriety—I would say the duty—of making use of all the mechanical facilities afforded by the modern organ for producing light and shade and contrast of effect. Bach himself would have been entirely in favour of this, for he was essentially a man of progress, and with a great knowledge of and interest in organ mechanism. Best used to give a fine practical illustration of the resources of the modern organ in this respect, is playing the first movement of the *Pavane* in G (Vol. IV.), which he generally played throughout on 16-ft. and 8-ft. diapasons, with no change till the chord—



with which the movement abruptly breaks off, and into which he suddenly threw the whole power of the organ, with an almost startling effect. Bach could not have done that, because he had not the mechanism for it, but I am certain he would have enjoyed it, as much as he enjoyed the sudden shout on the word "Barabas" in the "Passion." The modern resource of the swell, though not quite as valuable an addition to the organ as is popularly supposed, is very useful as forming a bridge from *forte* to *piano* in fugue playing, so that we pass from the great organ to the open swell, with the stops arranged as nearly as possible in the same balance of tone, and gradually draw it—returning to *forte* by the reverse operation. I have found it often possible to change the great organ stops almost imperceptibly in a fugue by adding a moment when only one note is sounding (or only one besides the pedal), always with the rule to choose a high note to add notes on, and a low note to add five stops on—the addition of a reed being the least perceptible on a high note, that of a mixture five stop lower on a low note. The modern invention of solo reeds on a heavy wind is a source of special effect too much overlooked in regard to classical organ music; it must be used with judgment and reserve, but many

five points may be made with it. As an instance, let me cite in the C minor Fugue, Vol. IV., the first entry of the theme in the major key—

Ed. Solo Reed. Gd

C Major.

where the passage happens to exactly suit the trumpet character, and the introduction of the reeds to lead off the phrase in the new key has a most brilliant and inspiring effect. In the "Dona" Fugue, the theme entering in the lower part in C major can be brought out splendidly on the solo reeds, producing on the hearer the effect of a sudden upstarting of the chime in a new and unexpected quarter—

Gt Staff in 1/4th Solo Reed

As generally played this inner theme is hardly perceptible to the hearer, on the solo reed it sings out a song of triumph heard distinctly over everything. The effect of the tuba reed in giving a long blast on a holding note may often be exceedingly fine; for an example of a splendid effect to be got with it in this sense, in the A major Fugue, the reader is referred to the article "Registration" in Grove's "Dictionary of Music." Another instance is at the close of the Toccata in F—



Here the solo must be copied to the clear manual, and the C of the solo reeds held down with the thumb, while the other fingers play on the great manual. In occasional passages, too, a fine effect may be got by alternating solo reeds with the great organ, as at the close of the Domic Fugue—



There are numerous fine points of effect of this kind to be

obtained by a well-judged and sparing use of the solo reeds in special passages, but it must be, like Mozart's use of the trombones, strictly reserved for special and appropriate passages; directly it is overdone, it loses its effect and becomes a commonplace.

The question of phrasing, as a means of giving additional point and expression to the subject of a fugue, is one of some interest. Some years ago Mr. Andy Williams read an admirable paper to this Association on the subject of the phrasing of Bach's "Wolltangente Clavier" fugue, tending to show how much additional expression could be imparted to them by this means. Of course, whatever value there is in phrasing in playing a pianoforte fugue, there should be still more in the case of an organ, where it is impossible to emphasize a note by mere touch, and emphasis or special expression can only be obtained by phrasing. Whether, however, Bach himself employed any such means of expression is very doubtful. I am inclined to think that phrasing on the keyboard is a later refinement, employed to a certain extent by Mozart and his contemporaries, and carried still further by Beethoven, who is scrupulously exact in marking the phrasing of passages in his pianoforte compositions, and evidently attached the greatest importance to it. If, however, we can by phrasing impart an additional point and interest to Bach's organ compositions, we are justified in employing it. There are some of the organ subjects which neither require nor seem to admit of phrasing; the B minor Fugue, for instance, with its subject marching up the scale and down again, should be as steady as a rock. But a great deal of additional point is given to the subject of the G minor Fugue by phrasing it thus—

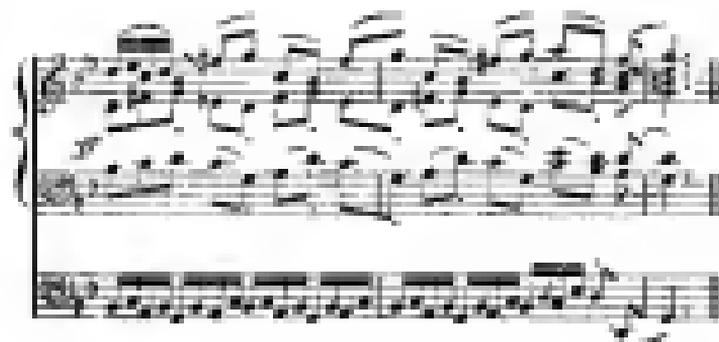


This can be kept up throughout where the subject is played by the pedal or entirely by one hand, where the subject in an inner part is divided between the two hands, of course it has to be dropped. But it is worth while to give an additional point and expression, sometimes, to the opening

figure is a *figura*, even if it is mechanically impossible to continue it consistently all through. I will instance the following in opening the little G minor Fugue—



Though this phrasing of the counterpoint figure cannot be kept up all through, it gives great point and interest to the opening, and I do not think any one who had once played it that way would care to go back to the mere mechanical playing of the notes; besides, there are several passages where it can be recalled, as it were, by way of keeping up the character of the reading. In a similar spirit, at the close of the great G minor Fugue, a great life and vigour is imparted to the last three bars by phrasing the chords for the hands, thus—



One might pursue the subject to any length; I will only offer two or three more illustrations—

C minor Fugue, Vol. III.



A minor Fugue.



F minor Fugue.

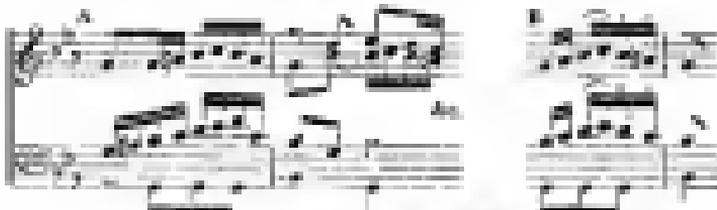


In the latter example, that *contra tenor* phrasing in the counterpoint figure in crotchets should be kept up consistently through the whole fugue, and adds greatly to its force and energy.

C minor Fugue, Vol. IV.



In the concluding portion of this *C minor Fugue*, the counterpoint figure at *A*, two or three times introduced, sounds rather weak and mechanical—



but phrase it as at *B*, and it is quite another matter. Whether my great favourite, the *Doric Fugue*, is susceptible of a phrase-treatment, or should be let severely alone, may be

a question; but it may be pointed out that if the first five notes are phrased thus—

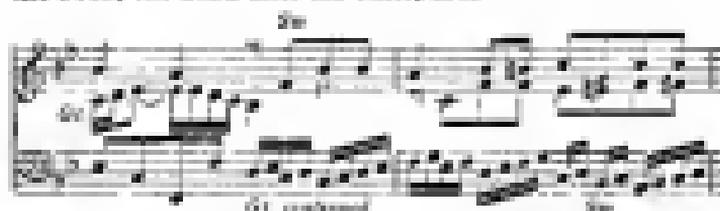


then the notes marked * seem more decidedly to anticipate and suggest the movement in intervals of fourths which follows; but it is, perhaps, an open question whether—

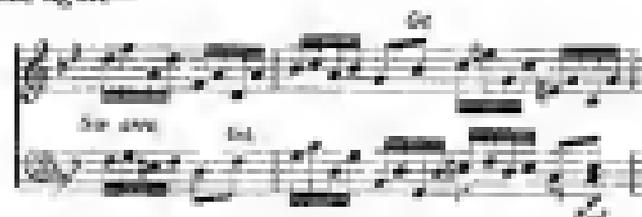


should not all be regarded as one phrase.

I may add some general remarks as to the treatment of some others of the principal compositions. The G minor Fugue I should commence on nearly full organ, as full so occurs with a *rit.* *resol.* on the pedals.² At the end of the first pedal passage the organ is reduced to *zpth*; at the end of the next pedal passage to principal; then we stop on to the swell, one hand after the other, thus—



making a gradual *diminuendo*, and returning in the same way to great full to *zpth*, the left hand taking up the great manual first, the right following half a bar later with the same figure—



² The full is obtained on the manuals with a *rit.* *resol.* on the pedals, is for many organs a very good combination for the louder portions of a figure, especially in a building where there is much noise, the manual portion is more distinct and less noisy than with a *resol.* added, while the *resol.* on the pedal makes an entry always stand out clearly from the whole.

When there is a solo organ with 8-ft. and 4-ft. flutes, a very pretty farther digression can be made—an episode within an episode—by a brief excursion from the swell to the solo manual at the passage commencing—



returning to the swell after a few bars or more for the great. With a little care all that can be done without a break in the effect, and in as unforced a manner as the change of instrumentation in an orchestra. The organ must be kept at full to 15th till we reach the low D on the pedal—

where the swell is added, the mixtures (mixturæ) being added in the next bar at the precise instant when no note but D is being sounded. The organ is continued thus till the long episode commencing just before the last page, where the power should be gradually reduced and brought back again, as in the former episode, till the last pedal entry comes in *f*, immediately followed by *f* on the manual.

The A minor Fugue I would commence on the fall to 15th, for if it is played the proper speed the pedal passages will not stand the confusing effect of a heavy swell. At the eighth bar of page 39 reduce to *pizzicato*; at the close of the pedal passage on the same page reduce to *dissonans*. During the eight bars preceding the long—



on page 41 the great organ should be gradually strengthened

again at a recurring point in each bar, till it reaches full to mixtures on the bar before the long B, which is then taken on the solo reed (coupled to clear manual for convenience), and the pedal covers *f*. The right hand drops the reed and comes back to the great manual at A—



for the moment the long notes are dropped the upper part loses its trumpet character, and at the half-bar the mixtures are cut off, for the light character of the succeeding passages demands a lighter organ. This passage, with the solo reed and *f* pedal, is the most salient effect in the whole movement; in a large organ it is wonderfully striking when traced in this way, and all the more so because the passage is short. The mixtures can be added again at * on page 52 (at the moment when only one part is sounded), in preparation for the final climax—



on the next page; and if there is more than one reed, reed on the pedal, the quieter one may be added here; otherwise the pedal reed should be reserved till the fourth bar of the concluding page, whence to the end we want the full power of the organ. At the end of the pedal reed an additional emphasis may be produced by playing the last

half-bar slightly *ritardando*, and bringing the left hand down on the sole note at the final , thus giving the greatest possible emphasis to the closing note.

Take the *Tocatta* in F. I would commence this on great manual with principal and 15th, but without the 16th, which interferes with the lightness and purity of the effect,* and with the 16-ft. boardless, which prevents it sounding thin. The drone note on the pedal should not be too full—not with the largest open 28-ft., or it gets rather overpowering to the ear. At the last bar of page 47 the 16th may be added and the pedal strengthened, by way of commencing to work up for the pedal solo; great manual being strengthened at the last two bars where the left hand plays alone, and the pedal solo entering *f* and coupled to great. It would be poorer taste, perhaps, in an æsthetic sense, to play the whole two pages, pedal solo and all, on the same organ; but the effect of the pedal solo with the full power of the organ is so grand that it would be a pity to miss it, while to begin the movement on the full organ would be barbarous. After the close of the pedal solo with the three chorals on the full organ, reduce the organ and go through the same process over again on the dominant. The rest of the movement divides itself into three distinct musical ideas alternating, and treated the same way at each recurrence. That commencing—



with 16-ft. read on the pedals and fall to mixtures on the great; that commencing—

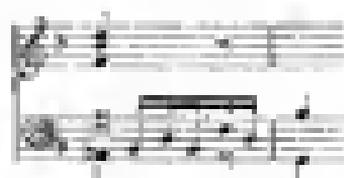


which is a reminiscence of the design of the opening, with the organ reduced to 15th (and perhaps, a bar or two later, to principal)—the passage back again to the loud organ is easily managed when the pedal re-enters with the phrase—



* There are many light *Agudo* passages in organ music where full to 15th without the 16th, has the best effect. occasionally even boardless 16-pipes, and 15th, without either principal or 16th.

and so on at each recurrence. Thus there is the tremendous passage with the succession of third assertions of dominant seventh—



which at each recurrence should be given with every power that can be crammed on to the organ; it ought to be fired off with ostentation, were that possible!

The last composition I will refer to is the *Prelude and Fugue in B minor, Vol. II.* The prelude calls for, and is susceptible of, so much elaboration and variety of effect that it would require too much space to go through it fully. It is not anywhere to be played very loud, only rising to full or 17th coupled so well in the first and second lines of page 81, which is the culminating point of effect. I should commence on the swell, until the rather marked phrase on the pedal—



when the pedal is strengthened and the hands go on to great diapasons. Four bars later a very nice bit of scoring can be introduced, where, at the *ritard.*, the right hand is changed to clarinet on *clair* (perhaps coupled to a clarinet on solo manually one finger or the thumb striking the clarinet



A musical score for organ, consisting of three staves. The top staff is labeled 'Organ' and contains a melodic line with several notes and rests. The middle and bottom staves contain accompaniment, with the bottom staff featuring a more complex rhythmic pattern. The music is written in a key with one flat and a common time signature.

at the same moment as on the great, which is quitted at the end of the note, the passage then resolving itself into a clarinet *due* for the right hand, with left still on great *disposée*, continued thus till the next fall close. This effect, however, should not be repeated at the repetition of the same passage at the foot of the third page, where both hands should be on the great, as we are there working up to the culminating effect. The passage on the second page—

A musical score for Clarinet, consisting of two staves. The top staff is labeled 'Cl. Clarinet' and contains a melodic line with a series of notes and rests. The bottom staff contains accompaniment. The music is written in a key with one flat and a common time signature.

A musical score for Solo Flute, consisting of two staves. The top staff is labeled 'Solo Fl. Flute' and contains a melodic line with a series of notes and rests. The bottom staff contains accompaniment. The music is written in a key with one flat and a common time signature.

has a good effect as an alternate clarinet and flute solo (or oboe and flute), with a soft *bas* on the swell. The whole of the concluding page should be treated with constantly increasing delicacy and softness. The closing line has a

beautiful effect with right hand on swell (soft 8-ft. reed) and left hand on a soft clear flute—

The first system of the musical score consists of three staves. The top staff is for the right hand, marked with a swell ('sw.') and '8 ft. Reed'. The middle staff is for the left hand, marked with 'Flute' and 'Cb'. The bottom staff is a lower register, also marked with a swell ('sw.').

The second system of the musical score consists of three staves. The top staff is for the right hand, marked with a swell ('sw.'). The middle staff is for the left hand, marked with a swell ('sw.'). The bottom staff is a lower register, marked with a swell ('sw.').

the last bar both hands on the swell diapasons only, *pp*.

The fugue has a great deal of scope for contrasts of loud and soft, but from its very connected character the transitions are difficult to make. The commencement should be full organ, down to the close in F sharp minor on the second page, where the pedal leaves off. At that point reduce to (2d) two bars later to principal, two bars later to diapasons; then at the following passage we have—

The third system of the musical score consists of two staves. The top staff is for the right hand, marked with a swell ('sw.'). The bottom staff is for the left hand, marked with 'Cb' and a swell ('sw.').

continue both hands on the swell till the next entry of the subject in the left hand, when the left drops on to great diapasons and remains there—

Musical score for the first system. The right hand (RH) plays a melodic line with a 'Swell' marking. The left hand (LH) plays a bass line with a 'Gt. Diap.' marking.

At the passage where the subject enters on the right hand in F sharp minor, the right hand changes to clear clarinet—

Musical score for the second system. The right hand (RH) is marked 'Cl. Clarinet' and the left hand (LH) is marked 'Gt. Diap.'.

and so we remain for the next few bars, the effect of the clarinet tones here, contrasted with the liquid running passages on the great diapasons, is quite a charm to the ear. We get the right hand back on to great manual nearly enough at the scale passage at the end of the second line—

Musical score for the third system. The right hand (RH) is marked 'Gt.' and the left hand (LH) is marked 'Gt.'.

and go on with both hands on diapasons alone till the full close in D is the first bar of the last line of the page, where we add principal, and in the third bar of page 86, where there is another entry of the theme, we take an opportunity to add full to 15th, not on the first of the bar, however, that would be too harsh, but at the third quaver, where only two parts are sounding, in thirds. In the third line we may gradually strengthen both pedal and manual till we have got to full to

minors at the last bar of that line, where the theme enters in the treble in C sharp minor. In the next bar, at the bold phrase on the pedal—



the pedal need is added, both to bring out that phrase and to prepare for the climax two bars following, where the theme enters in the tenor, and the whole power of the organ is brought on—

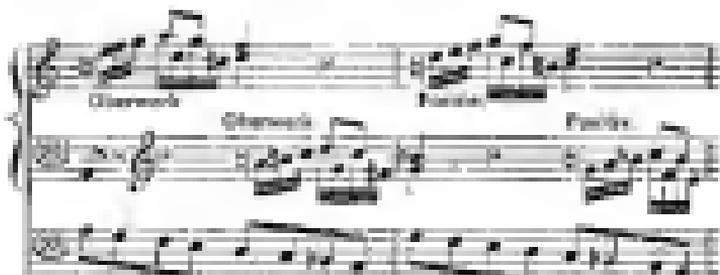


On a large organ it adds intensely to the grandeur of the passage to play the pedal in octaves, as marked here (it is not in the original); it not only adds power, but the bold contrary motion phrase beginning on the C natural sounds out with splendid effect. From here we keep full organ to the end.

I have ventured to go in detail into my own treatment of the fugue, because it is one with which I took special trouble, and which, for the reason mentioned above, is very difficult to manage, and I must candidly admit that I was well satisfied with the result.

A word as to the balance of tone of the English organ is relevant to the playing of Bach's music. In spite of the immense development in size and variety of stops of our modern organs, they still retain the old tradition of the English organ as consisting of one manual which is enclosed in a swell box, another which is essentially light and "jazzy" in tone, and a third which is very much larger and heavier in scale than the other two. Though the swell is very useful, as already remarked, in assisting as in the transition from lead to solo in the fugues, as a kind of bridge, it does not in other respects add much to the effectiveness of Bach's organ music, which is not sentimental in feeling, and was not

written with any view to the kind of expression obtainable from the swell. Perhaps it is only in certain passages in the E minor and B minor Preludes that the swell is of real value in adding to the expression of the music; and it is worth note that both these movements are particularly modern in style compared with most of the organ compositions. Then our choir organ is obviously too light for the effects which Bach contemplated. The only insight we get into his ideas in this respect is in the Dorian Toccata, where the changes of manual are all marked. In the fine passage which occurs twice, where each bar is to be played alternately on the chorwerk and the positive—



we can get no such effect with choir and swell; and besides, the swell interferes with the smooth execution of the pedal passage. All we can get is the choir manual contrasted with, say, the weakest diapason and a flue on the great. I happened to hear Best play this Toccata on two occasions, within a short period, on the same organ. The first time he played this passage as nearly as possible as marked—*viz.*, on choir organ and a soft great organ. The second time he evidently had felt, what I have always felt, that the effect was too light for the character of the music, and he played the whole passage on the great with diapason and principal and a heavy pedal. In the passage near the end, where the two hands play on separate keyboards and cross each other—



there is nothing to be done with an English organ, that I can see, but to play one hand on great manual *mf* and the other on the small with *ff*, reeds fixed open—a coarse effect, but, at all events, not weak. For such passages, as for the *Tribes*, what we really want is two manuals of equal power. There is, or was a good many years ago, a grand old organ in the parish church of Northampton, with four keyboards—choir, swell, and two great manuals, equal in power but somewhat differing in tone. That is what we want for Bach's organ music. As a matter of tone, also, in nearly all our modern organs the great organ reeds are too noisy and clanging; they obscure the fine-work tone instead of blending with it, a mistake most distressing to the clear definition of parts in a fugue. We can now have the clanging reeds on a distinct manual, and they should be reserved for that. And on the pedal, for the adequate playing of Bach's organ music, there should be, even on a moderate-sized organ, two 16-ft. reeds, one of quiet and round tone, to blend with the full organ without standing out pertinaciously, the other a more powerful one, of harder tone, to play a chorale melody as a *cantus firmus*, and make it stand out boldly. No single 16-ft. reed can be made to answer both purposes.

In conclusion, I would urge that while every opportunity should be taken so long as the public to a better acquaintance with and appreciation of Bach's organ music, this end will certainly be furthered by the study, on the part of players, to increase the interest of these great compositions for a modern audience, by a full use of the opportunities for variety and contrast of effect which the mechanism of the modern organ affords.

MUSICAL ASSOCIATION.

April 26, 1901.

THE CHAIRMAN.—Before we proceed to any other business there is one thought which I am sure is occupying all our minds to-day, viz., the realisation of the great loss the Association has sustained by the death of its President, Sir John Stainer. We have not had many Presidents of the Musical Association, although we are now getting to be quite an old Society; but I do not think any former President took a greater interest in or did more work for the Association than did Sir John Stainer. His loss will be severely felt by all of us, and his position will indeed be a very difficult one to fill. At a Council Meeting held to-day it was resolved to send the following address of condolence to Lady Stainer, which I will now read for your approval:—

“ London,

“ To Lady Stainer,

April, 1901.

“ Madam,

“ On behalf of the Vice-Presidents, Council, and Members of the Musical Association, and in pursuance of a Resolution unanimously passed by the Council on April 26, and confirmed by the Members at their subsequent meeting, we beg leave to tender to you and your family our most sincere sympathy for you in your recent bereavement by the lamented death of Sir John Stainer, and to assure you of the profound esteem felt for him by this Society, of which he was one of the Founders, and has been for so many years the respected President.

“ We are,

“ Madam,

“ Very faithfully yours,

This will be signed by the chairman of the Council to-day, Mr. Otis Goldschmidt, and will be also signed by the Treasurer, Mr. Posenbergan, and the Secretary, Mr. Baker, on behalf of the Council and the members generally.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—Ladies and Gentlemen, our first duty is to propose a very hearty vote of thanks to Mr. Statham for a very interesting paper. Mr. Statham's remarks will, I am sure, excite a lively and an interesting discussion. There are several eminent organists here, and we are all anxious to hear what they have to say. I am certain there are several points which will bear a little criticism and discussion. In the first place, I venture to disagree with the idea that Bach's Organ Music is his central achievement; I should have thought his pianoforte Fugues quite as good as those for the organ. And then with regard to his Choral Music—surely any of us who have heard the Passion Music at St. Paul's Cathedral will admit that there is a wonderful power of expression in that. Take for instance the beautiful solo, "Have mercy upon Me"; that is full of genuine pathos which never fails to touch anyone who hears it. Then again in the solo in E flat towards the end, "See the Saviour's outstretched arm," there are some beautiful passages on the words "See" and "Hear," which are not only thoroughly vocal but are also full of an emotional tenderness which is quite modern in style and likely to remain so. I should like to know any organ piece as full of beauty and natural expression as the two vocal excerpts I have named. Then with regard to the Toccata in F. Mr. Statham seemed to think this belonged to the earlier period of Bach's organ works. I think that in spite of the modulations (and they must have been very wonderful for the time in which they were written) Bach manages to maintain the figure of the Toccata very consistently and very beautifully throughout. The piece is really a Toccata, that is, a piece which is calculated to show the work and technique of the performer, as well as the mastery of figuration on the part of the composer. It is something new to me to hear the B greater *Prélude* as I have always called it (the one marked *pre organo piano*) spoken of as a Toccata.

Mr. STATHAM.—In Griepenkerl's edition it is called a Toccata.

Dr. FRASER.—I always thought it was a *Prélude*, and a very beautiful *Prélude* too. I fail to see anything in it of the Toccata character.

Mr. STATHAM.—I quite agree with you.

Dr. FRASER.—It seems to me to be in entire consonance with the spirit of its associated fugue all through. I should think it must have been written to precede that particular Fugue in B minor. And then I should be glad to know

why there should be any doubt as to the Organ Preludes actually belonging to the Fugues with which we are accustomed to associate them. We do not doubt the indissoluble union of Prelude and Fugue in the '48.' I should like to know what evidence there may be to warrant our putting asunder any two movements which Bach himself may seem to have intended to have joined together. Then with regard to the modern playing of fugues, I must say I have heard our late President play fugues for many years—I used to sit in the organ loft with him. I think his style of fugue-playing was that which was likely to command itself to most lovers of the great contrapuntal art-design. His idea was that in the performance of an organ fugue the tone intensity should grow exactly as the interest of the composition itself grows. First we get the subject, then the exposition, then the episodes and different groups of middle entries, then the stretto where the interest largely increases, until finally the pedal and coda are reached. It seems as if the whole work grows in interest from the very first presentation of the subject to the end, and therefore I have always agreed with Sir John Stainer's method in playing a fugue that you should begin moderately, quietly, and increase the tone of the organ as you go on. This method always worked well, and was very effective at St. Paul's at any rate. Then I think Mr. Statham said something about Bach's counterpoint being, as it were, extrinsic to the subject-matter of the fugue. In many fugues, I must say, it seems to me to grow out of the subject-matter. There is a beautiful Fugue in C minor—one which follows the Prelude which is almost in modern sonata form—the Prelude with the triplets. I think there, the counterpoint which accompanies the principal episode, really does very largely grow out of melodic matter originally heard with the theme itself. Of course, the E minor is an episode fugue—it almost seems to me to be a kind of big ternary form. There is a first part, a modulating middle part, and a recapitulation of the first part almost verbatim. Then I must say our late President had a great objection to quick performance, especially in large churches. I have heard him say that at St. Paul's, he always took the time slower than he would in another place where there was not so much echo. With regard to phrasing, I agree with much of what the lecturer said. Professor Frost, in his book on Form, shows that the proper phrasing does away with any bad effect likely to arise from the consecutive fifths in the D minor Toccata. It is rather new to me to hear that there are many single notes in Bach's Organ Fugues. I cannot say I have met with very many after the first enunciation of the subject. Then, as to the use of the tuba in the A minor Fugue, I know, from his

previous writings, that Mr. Statham is very sweet on this; but with most tubas, if they are on the pressure which Willis assigns to them, you must bear the *foils* and not the subject, I am afraid. And it really seems to me that no fugue should be started on the full organ. It is surely extravagant to hear a 16-ft. stop doubling the subject in octaves below. I cannot think of any single Bach fugue which ought to be begun on the full organ. Trios for two manuals and pedal would certainly have a very charming effect on a divided organ, such as St. Paul's or All Saints', Margaret Street. I have heard Sir John Stainer play them in this manner, and under his masterly hands they certainly had a very charming effect.

Sir FRANCIS BRIDGE.—I think we must all have been impressed with one thought while the paper was being read, and that was that to-day we must especially feel the loss of our President. Nothing would, I am sure, be more gratifying and nothing could be better or more valuable to us could we have had him here to listen to this paper and to comment on it. We know very well what his power was as an organist, and also as a Chairman or President of a meeting, and we know the admirable way in which he would have put his finger on the many weak points which I am sure he would have discovered in Mr. Statham's paper. I have made a few notes. Dr. France has anticipated me on many points, but I should like to say that we owe Mr. Statham a deep debt of gratitude for bringing the subject forward. This is the sort of paper we want—a paper that contains some important classical possession that we have, which a good many of us know something about; and we do like to hear a new view, or rather a view taken by a man who has evidently spent hours and days in the study of these things, and who has an admirable way of expressing what he thinks. I have great respect for Mr. Statham; I have known him for a long time; I have read articles by him for a long time; and I have always had considerable respect for his knowledge of the organ and organ music; but I think he has not at the feet of Mr. Best rather too long. I know where he had been perfectly well; I have heard these effects myself. I lived in Manchester. It is now a long time ago, but I had the opportunity of hearing Mr. Best play very often. I yield to no one in admiration for Mr. Best as an organ performer. He was a most remarkable and admirable executant, and an extremely clever man, who did immense service in the way of giving organists new views on orchestral treatment which is all right under certain circumstances, but he was not altogether a safe guide for young men of impressionable sentiments, as Mr. Statham evidently was—and I was once; for he would do a thing out of pure mischief, not because he liked it, but because

you would not like it; and I am sure that would account for some of those strange effects that I have heard. My own practice is not so strange to play a Bach fugue through, from beginning to end, with all stops out and no change; that is not precisely. But you must know where to draw the line. I believe thoroughly in variety; I believe thoroughly in alternation of light and shade; I agree very much with many of the suggestions which Mr. Statham made at the end. That great Toccata in F I once heard played at the orchestra at Manchester, and I learned a great deal from it. It was in 1878, at one of Hallé's concerts; the arrangement was by Stalder. I learnt one important point from it; perhaps I am giving myself a little away. But it had a grand effect. Perhaps Mr. Statham will retort, "you have a favourite show piece of your own, but you won't let me have my tube for a minute." I must put in a protest against anything like minute scoring of Bach's music for the organ. When it comes to a proper division such as you might make in the Toccata in F, that is another thing. With regard to phrasing I do not like the \bar{G} minor duet up in the style in which Mr. Statham played it. I do not think he would get the effect on many organs, and he must be a good player to get it on many pedals. I have said more than I intended; I cannot read all the notes I made, that is not to be supposed, but I yield to no man in my appreciation of Mr. Statham's desire to set before us something to think about, and I hope he will accept what I have said merely as a straightforward expression of my opinions. He has given me food for reflection, and I shall practise organ fugues more myself, and see if I cannot get some new effects, but it will not be choruses and choros and chorons.

Dr. MANLIAN.—I have but two remarks to make. One is in regard to the organ works being Bach's main works. They occupy just one-fifth of the space in the forty-eight volumes of the Bachgesellschaft edition, and though allowance has to be made for their being only in three lines, yet still this gives a rough notion of the bulk at any rate which they occupy among the compositions. Secondly, as to the references which have been made to the Bach-playing of our late revered President. I think I am the only person in this room who was at College with him. We were undergraduates together for four years, and took our Doctor's degrees at the same examination. So that I had many opportunities of watching his organ playing at Magdalen. I remember distinctly that his fugue-playing underwent a change in those four years, showing a gradual dropping of fancy effects. It was a subject in which he was much interested and often talked; and there is no doubt as to what was the trend of his convictions. When he went to St. Paul's, with its larger organ and vast

speech, I believe that he still further solidified his style. I might perhaps add a third remark, in congratulating the Chairman, who has been put into the chair impromptu, on bringing so much ready knowledge to bear.

Dr. CURRIE.—I should like to thank Mr. Statham, because, being perhaps the oldest man in the room, I can refer to the playing of Bach's Fugues when I was a boy. In my boyhood the fashion was playing Bach was to pull out all the stops and to keep them out. I do not think the British public should be blamed for their want of appreciation of Bach's organ music. In London there are only two halls in which there are organs suitable for playing Bach, the Queen's Hall and the Albert Hall. Fancy trying to give a performance of Bach's Preludes and Fugues in the St. James's Hall. I am glad to hear Mr. Statham's paper, although I do not agree with all his views. Much of Bach's style teems with very plaintive and pathetic phrases, and I think musicians will discover for themselves what is the right way of playing them. I hope I should not hear anybody playing a passage with boards and 17th. Possibly if I heard it, I might not object so much as I fancy I should. But I think Bach's music deserves all the study that musicians can give it.

Mr. SEYMOUR.—I think as Dr. Currie is also a Director of the Philharmonic Society he might refer the question of Bach's music to the committee of the Society.

Dr. CURRIE.—The Philharmonic Society is a purely Orchestral Society, and at present we are dealing with organ music.

Dr. FURER inquired how Mr. Statham would render the G minor Fantasia on the organ in point of expression. Would he maintain a more or less subdued feeling throughout, or play it more in consonance with Lutz's pianoforte transcription to which he had alluded?

Mr. STATHAM: I will answer the last question first. I think this is a Fantasia which can be treated in very various ways. I have treated it in various ways myself, but for the most part I like keeping it rather quiet. I think the passages mostly do not lend themselves to the full organ. I think I have had the fate which sometimes meets people who make suggestions—that the said suggestions are supposed to be the central idea. I certainly do not for one moment mean to say that I have not the greatest admiration of Bach's vocal solos. I only say I think they are not so purely vocal as Handel's, and I think the organ affected him somewhat therein. The Chairman said he hated to hear a theme given out on the full organ. But, really, what are the doubts or the mutation stops for at all? I think that is expecting the organ to be something different from what it is. You must

take it for what it is, because you cannot get the opposite brilliancy otherwise. Sir Frederick Bridge has quite misunderstood me. I never "sat at the feet" of Best. I was, from my boyhood, most independent. I was a great pupil in those days, and disappointed of many things Best did. But Best did not himself care for some of the music he chose to play. He was in a difficult position, he had to amuse a popular audience with organ-playing three times a week all the year round. But Best had a most serious admiration for Bach's organ music. I have heard him speak of it almost with solemnity. And I never heard him do anything with Bach's organ music which did not seem prompted by his desire to do his best for Bach. He only gave it more effect, and made people listen to it who would not listen to most organ players. I did not for a moment suggest a re-scoring of Bach's fugues. I suggested points for the use of solo stops in some fugues, but only as calling attention to a source of effect which had been neglected. But a fugue like the early B minor, for instance, seems to bear that sort of orchestral variety. I was much interested to hear Sir Frederick Bridge's reference to his way of finishing Mendelssohn's fugue, as it is in the way I have always played it myself, so that we have independently hit on the same idea. I think these are all the remarks I wish to make, but I will just sum up by saying that I hope I have not given an impression that I am regarding Bach's fugues as material for instrumental effects. I only thought that they had been played in too straightforward a manner, and I suggested various little points where modifications might be made, not meaning to say that that was the central part of the question by any means. As to beginning quietly and ending loudly, that all depends on the character of the work. You might as well say that there should be a constant increase of loudness in playing movements from Beethoven's sonatas as to make a general rule of that kind for Bach's organ fugues.

Dr. COWSON.—With regard to the question of using a double in giving out a fugue, I think the double is very terrible. If I were an examiner, and a candidate started in that way, I should feel very much inclined to pluck him. If Bach wanted the subject in octaves he could have written it in octaves. I protest most strongly against giving out a subject with the double.

Sir FRANCIS BARON.—Did not Dr. Hopkins once express himself on the subject in print?

The CHAIRMAN.—I have only heard him express his opinion on what was added above, not on anything added below.

Sir FRANCIS BARON.—I think a good deal depends on the kind of stops you find in the organ. With regard to doubles, I must say that a very soft soft. detains would

not offend me. In the fugue in G major I should not scruple to add a double, but I would not have a high double—some people have even a 3d-ft. But that is a mere question of opinion; I think the general principle is that we ought not to try to put our own ideas into these things, but try to express what the composer has done. I hope Mr. Statham will accept me of anything beyond a desire to promote friendly criticism.

Mr. STATHAM.—I should like to add that the effect of playing on a mutation stop is not the same as playing on the same on octaves.

A vote of thanks to Mr. Statham was then passed unanimously.

May 24, 1900.

THOMAS LEA SOUTHGATE, Esq.,

IN THE CHAIR.

ON MUSICIANS' EARS.

By Miss MIRIAM A. ELLIS.

I HAVE been asked to add further details of my observations of musicians' ears, together with some of the statistics I have gathered. It will be best to place these details first, as an introduction to this new subject.

The outer ear has long been used for the purposes of identification of criminals. M. Alphonse Bertillon's book, "Identification Anthropométrique," contains directions for the measurements of the ears, and divides the parts to be noted into the helix, the antihelix, the tragus, the anti-tragus, and the lobe. Every ear differs, so that it has been found very difficult to reduce the rules to a practical form. The system has been adopted in England.

Having observed the ears of the upper educated classes, and studied Lavater's extremely vague remarks, it occurred to me to classify these "non-criminals" by means of stereoprints of the ears. Mr. Francis Galton—whose finger-printing method I adapted to the purpose—then brought M. Bertillon's book to my notice. But I found that the "non-criminals" had better developed ears than the criminals, and I had to mark off the helix, or rim, into more divisions, in order to identify them properly. Some of the results that I obtained were given in a paper read before the British Association in 1898, at the Bristol meeting. These have now been embodied and illustrated in my book, "The Human Ear: its Identification and Physiognomy" (Adams and Charles Black), published last December. Through friends, I had exceptional opportunities of obtaining ear-prints of those engaged in various professions and of high attainments, and I noticed that the ears of musicians

differed from the others in having a width of ossicle that interfered with the usual oval shape of the pinna.

The late Sir John Storer, Mus. Doc., gave me much kind help in studying ears of musicians, for which I shall always be grateful, and it was by his invitation (as President of the Musical Association) that I undertook this paper. Ossicles of his ears are in my book, as an example of the musician's ear. All the musicians he pointed out to me had the width of orifice I had observed elsewhere. Sir Walter Parnon, having a long oval ear, might seem an exception, but on measurement it will be found that the orifices are very much wider than usual in this form of ear, especially in the left ear, which is the orifice I always find slightly the widest in musicianly people. I should warn oval-eared persons that they have a greater chance of deafness than others, and should take more care of their ears, as the narrowness of orifice gives notice of weakness of the auditory nerves, and internal parts that assist the hearing.

The powers of hearing are well known to reside in the inner ear, and this being the case, physicians are apt to overlook the contents of the outer ear, while physiognomists have been content with the wildest conjectures, culled from the ancients and from Lavater's more modern researches. Many of Lavater's orifices are more like cyanoth than ears, and he had no system of comparison. It is just a hundred years since Lavater's death, therefore he had no photographs for collation. Nature prints are as useful as photographs for comparing the size and shape of the helix, lobes, and orifice, and the illustrations in this paper are all made from nature-prints (except Figs. 2, 3, and 4), taken by myself direct from the ear in each case, with the orifices afterwards traced in ink.

Since the shape of the outer ear indicates the kind and strength of the powers of hearing possessed by the inner ear, it is certainly worthy of careful note. There are several special forms of the orifice which appear to indicate the native powers of hearing music and of producing it. It is true that musician's-ear may be had without the proper training, but how often due training is wasted on the unmusical and without lives those who could profit by it! The ears of infants are well formed with the orifice of a distinct shape, and I have observed the musician's form in those of a few weeks old, as well as in those of a few months or years. In each case the child showed its pleasure in music. As the face grows, the nose lengthens, and the ear enlarges even more rapidly, and I have noticed that the helix, or rim, alters from time to time, although, as far as I have been able to observe, the orifice appears to remain the same. When the ear has attained the length that the nose will have when full grown, it stops

growing, apparently at about six to fourteen years of age. As it outstrips the rest of the face in growth, children are noticed for big ears. Perhaps, the saying "Little pictures have long ears," has a physiological foundation? The shape of the orifice will therefore guide the parent in choosing a musical training for the child. Greeting-organs, mechanical pianos, and musical boxes should be kept from children who have really wide orifices, as such monstrous waste inflicts untold pain of hardships upon such a child. Although I have never had the care of children, I have always been interested in education, and in watching their development my friends have frequently asked what I noticed and given me careful answers.

We must now describe the different kinds of musicians' ears. The ordinary kind of wide orifice is three-quarters the width of the whole ear at that part, and indicates excellent powers of hearing. The wide inlet between the tragus and anti-tragus seems to indicate quickness of hearing whole chords and distinguishing between sounds heard at the same time. Pianists, organists, and conductors of large orchestras usually possess these forms when they are very efficient performers and leaders. When there is a wide orifice with a rather narrow but very long inlet, single sounds seem to be the chief delight, and violinists often have this form—e.g., Paganini (see Fig. 9), also noted opera singers. For portrait examples, with the ears shown side face, of pianists, organists, violinists, and opera singers, see the *Musical Cosmos* (1833-37), and for conductors of varying degrees of celebrity, see "The Year's Mixer" (1833). Amongst amateurs, a delight in singing, or in hearing the singing of birds and human voices, rather than a delight in instrumental music, is very common where there is a moderate orifice and a narrow inlet. (See the Member of a Choir, Fig. 7.)

When the base-line of the orifice is rather straight, great accuracy in the hearing of high notes is possessed by the user etc., independently of these being musical notes or not. With a very narrow orifice and long, narrow inlet, this power of hearing high notes is practically unlimited. (See Fig. 13.) The owner of these ears is quite unusual, but has heard the highest notes ever offered by science as a test of the human powers. This peculiar power is also found so often among composers, that whenever a certain straightness of outline occurs in the other forms, we may expect to find a potential composer in the owner of the ear, if not one already known to fame. (See Figs. 3, 4, 5, 6.) Amongst noted organists whose sacred music has become known, the straightness is often in a slanted form, so parallel of the wide orifice running right into the wide inlet. The point of the anti-tragus appears to be nearly smoothed off, in fact.

There are, of course, composers without this form, but on further examination it will be found that this is due to the other qualities of the musician being so accentuated that the power of hearing acutely high notes is not the special point in their nature. The ear of composers' ears is, however, generally short and wide, and somewhat slanted.

Where the inlet is both wide and long and goes nearly straight down, there seems to be an inner capacity of the owner to accept musical sounds and to reproduce them with marvellous facility as the piano or the organ. This is a special power, and, unless the eyelid is wide also, it may exist without original powers. These persons do indeed usually compose also, but their compositions are unconsciously others at best, if not plagiaristic. But with a wide eyelid, the performers will often compose very agreeable original music.

List had a very wide right ear, straight at the base of the orifice, with a point marking the place where the end of the inlet came under the tragus. He generally wore his hair over his ears, but in one of the portraits from a photograph in the Musical Courier (November 18, 1897), the hair is nearly off the lower part.

Wagner's right ear was wide, and the orifice was curved at the base, showing a moderately wide short inlet.

Sir Frederick Bridge's left orifice is very wide, and the base is nearly straight, going into a wide inlet that ends in a point, almost level. It is the typical organist-composer's orifice, of the best kind.

Brahms's left orifice was very wide, and rounded at the back and base, with a moderately wide and long inlet, slanted upwards till the lowest part is level with the base of the orifice.

Chopin's right orifice was wide and gently curved at the base, the inlet short and wide, its end level with the base of the orifice in the way seen in many of the celebrated portraits.

Meyerbeer's left orifice was rather wide, with a nearly straight base, and a long narrow inlet, slanted like Sir Walter Parratt's.

Schubert's right orifice was wide and rounded, with a short wide inlet, slanting downwards. This is in a portrait from a painting, and seems badly drawn.

Most of the ears in the older engravings vary too much to be relied upon, but in the case of Mozart there is a certain resemblance amongst the best portraits. I have examined about a dozen, and even in childhood the wide ear is shown. I have taken the orifices from the most authentic pictures, and as they are certainly of the musician's shape we may accept them as probable. (See Fig. 3.)

I have consulted numerous photographs of savage races as well as of civilized ones, and where the ears are not disguised by native customs, the shapes were as individual as any others. The width of the ear follows the width of the outline of the profile of the jaw, and its length follows that of the nose from between the eyebrows to where the nostrils meet the upper lip. The negroes have wide ears and are coated musical.

Some terra-cotta votive ears, belonging to Roman days, are at the University Museum, Oxford, and others are at the British Museum. They appear to be carefully moulded portraits of the once-afflicted race. Every one of them suffers from a small or a narrow orifice, carrying out my suggestion that small or narrow orifices go with weaker inner powers of hearing than where the orifices are wide. The modern vogue ear-tablets of silver or wax are manifestly made by the score for sale, and the orifices are fancy articles altogether, except where some artistic effort has been made to obtain a handsome ear as a genuine model for customers.

It would be convenient to have some clue to the native powers of the inner sense both for hearing and for music, and the shape and width of the orifice will be found very useful if both ears are carefully studied and defined. But nothing in the course of training the musical powers appears to have any effect on the shape of the orifice, which only indicates the kind of native inner sense of hearing and whether it is naturally capable of receiving musical training and in what direction this will be the most successful. Where the left orifice is the best shaped and the widest, the training will take the longest and will produce the best musicians. Where the right orifice is the largest and the best formed, there will be great facility in youth, and by judicious training enough knowledge and practice can be got to obtain success; but something will certainly draw these people aside from their path after a time, because the powers of mental attention will wane of themselves, sufficiently to allow them to be distracted to other pursuits. In some cases the performer has become a teacher, a manager, or a director, without being also a conductor. I have noted these three kinds of careers in portraits and biographies over and over again. I have also observed that my amateur musical friends gradually become more or less musical after five-and-twenty, according to the relative shapes of their two ears.

A word must be said as to heredity in the shapes of ears, a subject fully treated of in a chapter of my book, and which I first brought into notice at the British Association (1866). One orifice of one parent will be repeated in the opposite ear of one of the children, and one orifice of the other parent will

be found in the same child's other ear. It is generally the eldest child that "takes after" both parents in this remarkable way. If the mother has wider or narrower ears than the father, the ears of most of the children appear to be modified in form by hers. I must refer readers to my book for numerous illustrations, as it can be easily consulted in the Reading Room of the British Museum. There is nothing in the shape or size of the ear or the orifice to show race or sex; it is simply in proportion to the length of the nose and the shape of the jaw, as I have mentioned before.

I submit an analysis of a hundred ears, taken from the *Medical Courier* (1855-7), wherever the portraits are directly reproduced from photographs. I have only been able to obtain ear ear in such case, therefore these are literally a hundred ears, not a hundred pairs of ears. They represent musicians of varied nationality and celebrity, but for obvious reasons I have not given their names:—

| | |
|-----|---|
| 4 | Composers. |
| 22 | Pianists. |
| 23 | Singers. |
| 10 | Violinists. |
| 23 | Organists. |
| 9 | Conductors. |
| 3 | Specialists (1 flautist, 1 bargman, 1 mandolinist). |
| 100 | Ears of Musicians. |

ORIFICES.

76 wide (28 were very wide), 24 moderately wide.

INLETS.

59 wide (28 were very wide), 23 moderately wide, 16 narrow.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS.

Composers have very wide orifices and generally very wide inlets.

The best pianists have very wide orifices and wide inlets.

Most good singers have wide orifices and narrow inlets.

Good violinists have wide orifices and narrow but very long inlets.

Organists have the orifice slanted into a wide inlet, pointed at its base.

Conductors have wide orifices and inlets of any of the above shapes.

The rest of this paper is the part which was read for me by the Secretary of the Mineral Association at the meeting of May 14, to whom my thanks are due for the trouble and interest he took in the matter. The illustrations are outlines taken from nature-prints (except Figs. 1, 5, and 6), and are analysed and shown to be examples of the various forms of mammals' ears, which differ according to their native capacities. I give it in the original form, as it shows I referred to the auditory nerves in the second instance, merely claiming that the shape of the orifice "indicates" the power of the inner hearing.

The average shape of the pinna, or outer ear, is somewhat oval, with a large lobe, and a moderate orifice or cochlea, which varies to width or narrowness according to the power of hearing of the possessor. (See Fig. 1.)

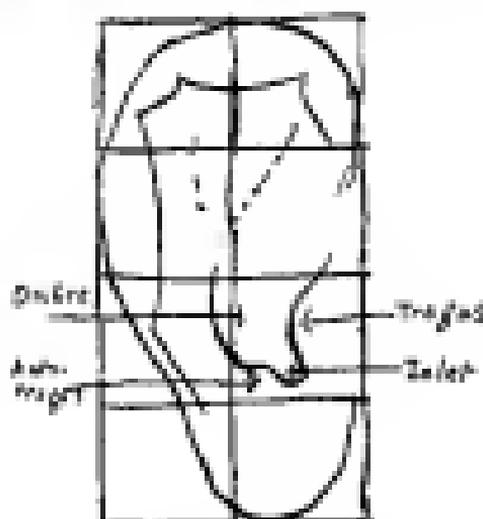


Fig. 1. Pinna, or Outer Ear.

The shape and size of the orifice—the cochlea or hollow of the ear—especially indicates the power of the auditory nerve, and the strength of the adjacent inner parts (the Eustachian tube and inner neural) to some degree from cold, disease, or old age. The outline of the orifice is formed by the tragus and anti-tragus, and the fold between them. (See Fig. 1 again.)

A wide orifice pushes back the lower part of the ear and entirely alters the average oval shape, frequently shortening and widening the lobe. (See Fig. 2.)



Fig. 2. Wide orifice
in middle ear

With this large wide orifice, a good power of hearing seems always to be created by the possession of the ear. Such persons seldom become the least deaf until well over seventy or eighty. As ears are never exactly alike in a pair, there is always one ear slightly less wide in the orifice or in the inlet between the tragus and anti-tragus than the other, and it is sure to become the first to be "hard of hearing." Where the orifice, on the contrary, is narrow, slight deafness frequently begins even before middle life.

We must define a musician for our present purpose as a person who can distinguish between musical sounds, and can reproduce them, either by playing upon an instrument, or by singing, or by writing them down in accurate notation. Those who can distinguish musical sounds accurately without being able to reproduce them, may be called "potential" musicians, a term used on one occasion by the late Sir John Stainer. But the necessity of reproduction generally goes with the power of hearing these special sounds.

Music is widespread, and we must also define the well-known English phrase who is "musical." A musical person is one who will listen to music with more or less pleasure, but will be unable to reproduce it in any way, however badly, and will require several "hearings" to recognise an

easy tone. He will not distinguish between good and bad music—in fact, he will often prefer bad music because it does not require any attention. He will actually not hear the component parts of a chord, nor their linear progression, and will least speak of his preference for what he calls "a good tune!" Classical music he calls "exercise," and says he prefers "real" music that has "something in it!" Amongst the lower classes, this musical person is fully ministered to by the grunting organ and the mechanical piano. The American organ is a more expensive variety of entertainment to such ears in co-operative workmen's clubs. Amongst the upper classes, a delight in a blaring brass band, where each instrument is out of tune with the rest, betrays the listener's incorrectly-shaped office.

The musician's ear has a wide girth, with a large space between the tips of the tragus and anti-tragus. The twist between the two latter is very short, and often slanted up until it is nearly level with the base of the orifice. (See Fig. 3. Ears of Mozart.)

Right Ear



Fig. 2. Mozart.

Left Ear



(From portraits at Oxford)

The two ears of Mozart show very beautifully the two forms of the musician's ear. They have been drawn from the best portraits at the Hope Collection of Portraits in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, and as they fit the face they are probably accurate. This is shown by the outline, which follows the outline of the jaw and chin, which are themselves of a shape that indicates that the ear must be wide. The wig of the period hides the upper part of the ear.

We can prove that such ears could only belong to a musician by comparing them with those of the late Sir John Stainer. (I should mention that it was with his express permission that I give these outlines, together with those of his friends, Professor Sir Hubert Parry and Sir Walter Parratt.) (See Fig. 4. Ears of Sir John Stainer.)

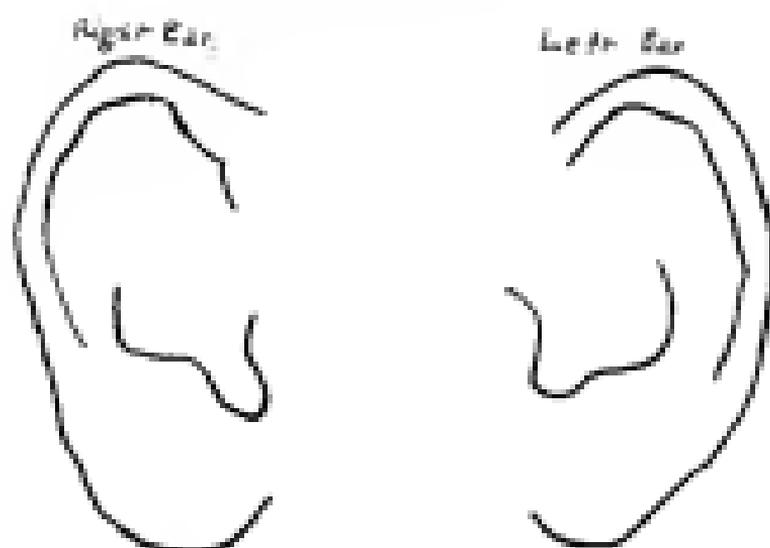


Fig. 4. Sir John Stainer Mus. Doc.

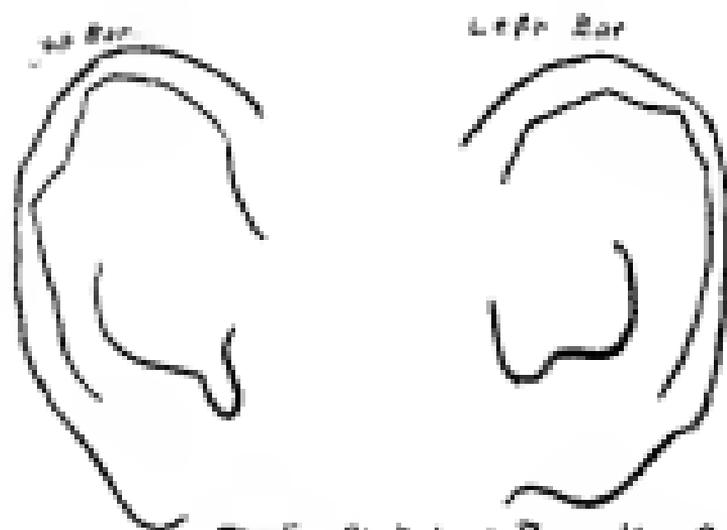


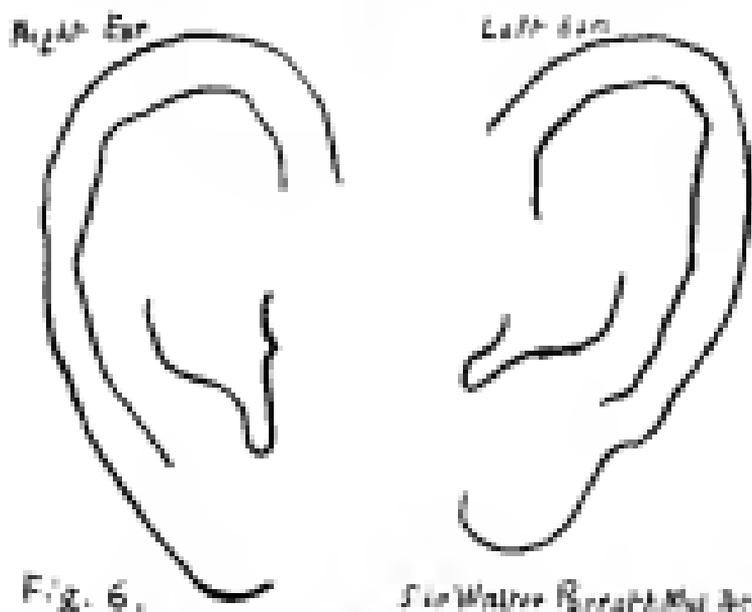
Fig. 5. Sir Robert Barry Mus. Doc.

The orifice and inlet of the right ear correspond exactly with those of Mozart's left ear, and those of the left ear with Mozart's right ear.

A variation of form is found in the ears of Sir Hubert Parry. (See Fig. 5. Ears of Sir Hubert Parry.)

Both orifices are wide, but the inlet in the right ear is only of median width, preventing full access of sweet sounds to that ear, and in the left ear the wide and sharply inlet points downwards instead of sloping upwards. This shows a limitation of choice of music, owing to a few gracious sounds being unnoticed in spite of great quickness of hearing.

A still more remarkable variety of form is shown in the ears of Sir Walter Parratt. (See Fig. 6. Ears of Sir Walter Parratt.)



The ear is long and inclined to be oval, yet the orifice is wide in proportion to the ear; and though the inlet is long and narrow, yet the top is somewhat wider. In the left ear the inlet slopes up so much that the whole ear is slightly widened to make room for this slope, and the point of the anti-tragus is a mere curve, whilst the base of the orifice is nearly flat. This gives acute hearing for musical sounds, whilst other sounds are disregarded, as there is not enough "hearing" to space for them.

This long narrow inlet is seen in vocalists. [See Fig. 7. Ears of member of a large choir.]

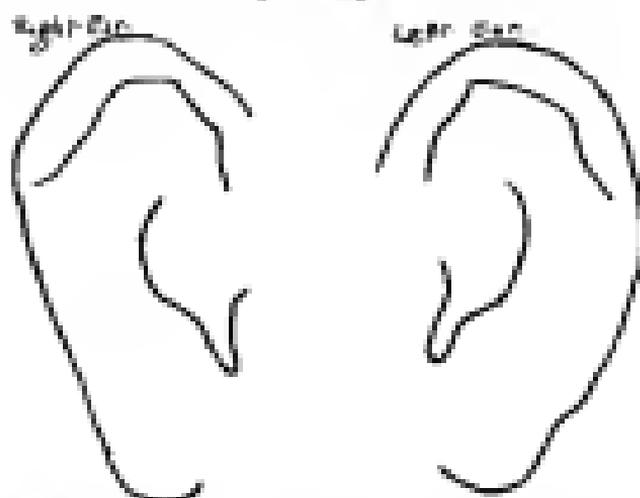


Fig 7. Member of a large choir.

There is a sort of likeness in this left ear to Sir Walter Parratt's right ear, but the orifice is not so wide. It belongs to a singer in a large choir. Another member of the same choir possesses entirely different ears. [See Fig. 8. Ears of second member of the choir.]



Fig 8. Second member of the choir.

The left ear shows the nature of a musician, but the right ear counteracts it by being so much narrower, whilst the inlet, though wide, goes nearly straight down—it is therefore likely that singing would take the place of instrumental performance, as being easier to an amateur.

In a careful profile portrait of Madame Alfred, the renowned singer, the lower part of the ear is shown. The orifice is very wide, but the inlet is narrow, though as it slopes up nearly level with the base of the orifice, the whole ear gains its majestic power. Perhaps that was the secret of the extraordinary charm of her singing, which sounds otherwise incredible as handed down as history.

A wide orifice sloping suddenly into a short wide inlet, is found often among organists and professional pianists, according to modern photographs. Where the inlet is not so wide, stringed instruments were preferred. But wherever the musician is also a composer of agreeable and successful music, the base of the orifice is generally found to be rather flatter than in those who are only, or chiefly, performers.

Paganini was a man—*not* a performer, and if we can trust the portrait, his ear would bear this out. (See Fig. 9. Outline of ear of Paganini.)

Right Ear
(From portrait
at Dresden)



Fig 9. Paganini, N.

The narrow inlet is raised so high that its point is level with the base of the orifice, in the way that the wide inlet often is in good composers. We cannot be certain that his ear is rightly drawn, but such a shaped orifice is not to be seen in any other portrait of the many thousands I have examined, so that we may give it the benefit of the doubt. Paganini's ears must have been as extraordinary as this one, in any case.

Among those who enjoy good music and attend concerts frequently, without being more than the merest amateur performers or singers, will be found a pretty rounded form of orifice and a rather narrow inlet. (See Fig. 10. Ears of a concert-goer.)



Fig 10. A "Sweet-Sour."

The right orifice is the widest, and when this is fixed the owner relishes by degrees in attention to music. Among ladies, the usual excuse is their being "too busy," although far busier folks, whose orifices are less unequal in width, find time for the welcome of

"linked sweetness long drawn out."

The innate love of music survives to old age, in spite of all obstacles, if there should be one ear that has a very wide orifice. (See Fig. 11. Ears showing innate love of music.)

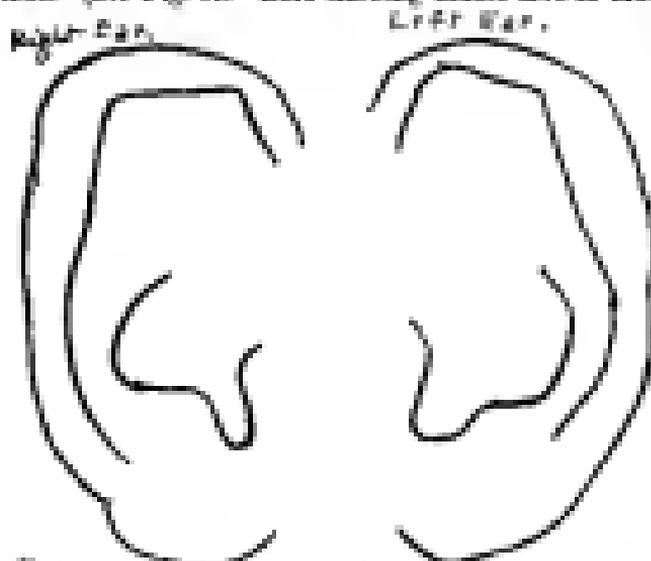
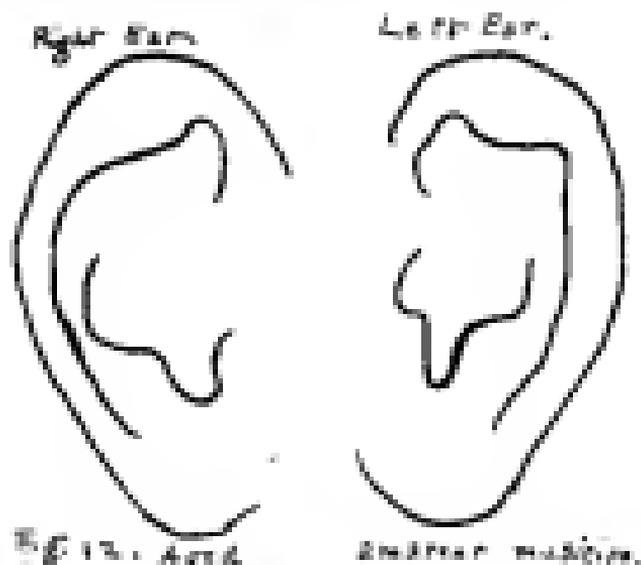


Fig 11. Innate love of music.

Here the right orifice being less wide than the left and the inlet narrow, music was pushed aside, in this case by a Quaker up-bringing. In middle life the scruples being removed on the owner joining the Church of England, the left ear was allowed to indulge in its delight in music, although performance was now impossible. The owner of this wide orifice and wide inlet especially enjoys classical music, and dialhas had music without knowing why. She also has as good hearing in this ear as in her youth, though the other is very slightly touched by advancing age.

When the line of the base of the orifice is almost flat (here seems to be particularly acute hearing. (See Fig. 22. Ears of an aged amateur musician.)



These are the ears of an amateur musician, whose hearing, at over eighty years of age, is still more acute than that of most young folk. The right orifice is that of a musician, the left is also wide, but the long straight narrow inlet betwixt the cranium, whilst the straightness at the base of the orifice shows the partially acute hearing.

An absolutely unmusical person ought, by this code, to have narrow orifices and very narrow inlets. If the base of the inlet is straight, the hearing should be acute for high sounds. I have been fortunate in obtaining the shape required, and the owner, who can hear exceptionally high

acute sounds, does not like music. (See Fig. 13. Ears of an unusual person.)

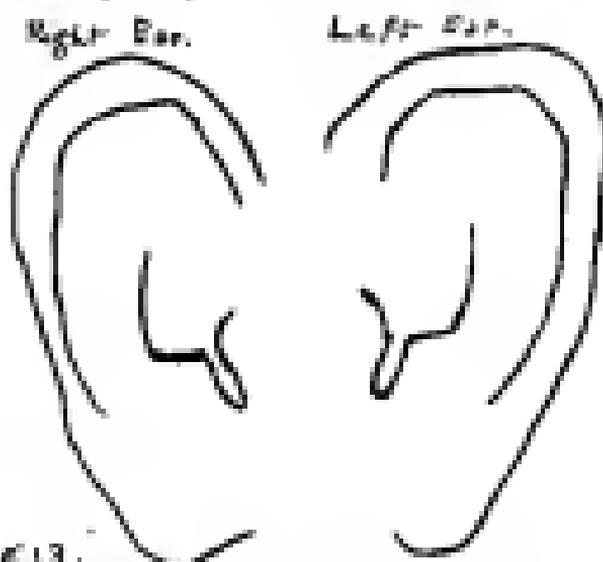


Fig. 13.

Unusual, but acute hearing.

I have also met with another case, not quite so pronounced, where the owner prided herself on being able to hear the bat's cry, and she assured me that ninety-nine per cent. could not hear it. In this I think she is mistaken, as even musical persons can hear it, and musicians do not find the particular pleasure in hearing that shrill squeak which the unmusical appear to obtain from it.

It is well known that people frequently hear differently with each ear, and this bears out the suggestion I offer in this paper that the shape of the orifice and the inlet indicate different powers of hearing.

It would be well to take special care of an ear with a narrow orifice (as of the sight of a weak eye), as the hearing is more liable to suffer on that side from chills, spray or cold. I may mention that the auditory mechanism of sight was once for two or three days suddenly dead. The cause was over-fatigue of her nervous system, and, with proper rest, her hearing returned as acute as ever. If she had known that a narrow inlet indicated a predisposition to over-fatigue of the auditory nerves, she would have been able to avoid this transitory deafness. It would be valuable to our young singers, who more often have narrow inlets than

wide ones, to know how to take care of their hearing. I have not been able to obtain any authentic picture of Beethoven's ears, but perhaps the inlet of his left ear was of that narrow kind, for it is said that his deafness arose from having worn out his auditory nerve. In one of his letters he said he had heard so much more acutely than other people, that he seemed surprised his hearing should fail him. As the outline of the ear corresponds with the outline of the jaw and chin, as I have already had occasion to mention, we can surmise Beethoven's ear was wide, with an orifice that had a straight base. I have noticed that where both the inlet are wide and rather short, the hearing is strong up to extreme old age.

There does not seem any reason for one ear being different from the other, and still less reason for the following deductions I have drawn from practical observation. In right-headed people, I find the right orifice shows the kind of way in which they will regard music at first, and the left orifice will show how music will be regarded and carried out by them in the rest of their lives. We must all know excellent musicians whose orifices are of unusual kinds, and musicians who cannot take the high place their talents deserve because of tendencies to insubordination in youth. Like soldiers, who must be of a certain height, musicians must have orifices of sufficient size to be successful in their warfare with life for the capture of sweet sounds.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—Ladies and gentlemen, I do not know why, unless by accident, I should had myself in the chair on this occasion, because I have certainly no claim to a special knowledge of the subject. There is, however, one thing that I have noticed, and that is how very considerably the shape and contour of people's ears differ. Perhaps you do not notice, until possibly you have your attention specially directed to it; but after this meeting, you will, I dare say, be looking at your neighbours' ears and then will notice how they differ in size and shape, and how far back some are set, and so on, I have drawings before me showing this matter. I am happy to see and notice that, curious as the various shapes and sizes are, at least it can be said that musicians' ears are rather long and pointed. There are probably some here who may have something to say on the subject, and I hope we shall have an opportunity of discussing the matter. I see one distinguished doctor here—Mr. Lewis Brown—and I am sure you will be happy to hear what he has to say. But

there are two or three things that have been stated on which I should like to offer a few remarks. First of all as to the potential capacity of musicians being judged by the shape of their ears. I must confess I have usually looked on this matter as one of natural gifts and of training rather than depending on the contour of the particular apparatus with which nature has provided us to hear music; but, perhaps, Miss Ellis will tell us if the contour is not so. If that be so, and there are enough examples from which to form a safe deduction without drawing hasty generalisations, we might well at once when children are born whether they have a chance of becoming musicians. What an advantage it would be! All the unfortunate who never do anything satisfactory beyond paying for their master's instruction could be brushed aside, and the promising ones could be sent to the R. A. M., or R. C. M.; no doubt we should thus get much better results than at present. If the shape of the ear helps us to determine this, then I think this paper will not have been written in vain. I see a drawing there of Mozart's ear. Of course, most persons who have read anything about Mozart's personal appearance, and those especially who have been to the *Mozartium* at Salzburg must have noticed this. I always supposed this curious drawing to be an exaggeration; perhaps it is not, but it differs enormously from the general form of the ear. I should like to ask Miss Ellis, who I hope at the end of the discussion will have something to say to us, whether she has had her attention called to the ears of barbarous people—I mean people who cannot appreciate Bach's fugues, or Beethoven's symphonies, or Wagner's operas—the ears, say, of Zulus or Hottentots; will she tell us whether there is this great diversity of shape to be found there as in the case of the civilized people she has examined? It certainly seems very curious to hear that as one grows the outer contour of the ear can be altered by anything that happens; but, as I understand the paper, theology has the power of altering the shape of the ear. If so, it would be very desirable to determine with certainty just which is the right and proper kind of religion, and then we might have our ears properly and theologically shaped accordingly. With regard to the limits of hearing, so far as I remember the lectures that were given many years ago, when I was quite a young man, by Tyndall at the Royal Institution, I think he showed that the limits of hearing depend on the longer or smaller number of the Corti fibres, which vibrate in reason to the pitch of the various sounds we hear. I think I can remember an illustration which Tyndall gave. He had a man, which was not going on a very low note, and he said, 'As the sound rises I want anyone who is no longer able to hear the sound to hold up his hand. After a time an individual in the

company held up his hand, though the rest of us could still hear. Later on others and others held up their hands, and at last the note became so high that I too was deaf to the sound; but there were some who could hear still higher notes. Perhaps someone will tell us whether this power of hearing is determined by the apparatus inside our ear, or by the outside cavity. Then as to deafness: if I rightly understand the paper, it seems that though deafness may arise from various mechanical injuries or from cold, it also in a measure depends on what happens to the outside portion of the ear, as well as to the complicated apparatus inside. I should like to know whether I rightly appreciated that or not. Now, before calling on Miss Ellis for her reply I will invite discussion; and first should like to hear what Mr. LENOX BROWN, who is a distinguished nasal surgeon, has to say on the subject.

Mr. LENOX BROWN.—It is quite true that I am not now a member of this Association, but I am happy to say I was an original member and a regular attendant for some years. I remember Mr. Ellis, to whom educators and musicians alike are so much indebted. Consequently, when I received an invitation to hear a paper from Miss Ellis, I gladly availed myself of the opportunity. I must, however, speak as I am inspired, and I am sorry to say I disagree with the author on two. In art we must speak what we feel to be right, and neither hard nor soft words will alter facts. The very premises of the communication are novel to me. I have always believed that the outside ear is simply a receiver, the middle ear the conveyor of sound, and the inner ear, to which you, Mr. Chairman, alluded, and your remarks were perfectly correct, is the chamber in which is situated the auditory nerve, that is, the nerve of special sense. The fact is, that really until this evening I have never heard of any anatomical difference in the shape of the external ear of any musician, whether a composer, instrumentalist, or vocalist, any more than we can find anything distinctive in the vocal chords of a singer. I have had the opportunity of seeing the vocal chords of Tietjens, Patti, Malke, and hosts of others. I believe there are some imaginative doctors, especially in the "gay city," who can tell whether a person has a singer's voice and even the range and quality by looking at the vocal chords. I have never seen it myself, nor do I believe there is any such difference.

The CHAIRMAN.—I should be glad if Mr. LENOX BROWN would go on to tell us whether an examination, not only of the vocal chords, but of the other parts of the throat, such as the soft palate, would give any indications of the prospect of that particular individual becoming a singer.

Mr. LENOX BROWN.—As an answer to your question, Sir, I would say that I remember having a very wonderful girl

brought to me from Florida, a child who, it was supposed, was going to be another Pagan. I said, as far as the throat is concerned, "There is no reason why she should not, but there is not the least reason that I can see why she should." When you come to the soft palate you come to muscles that are under control, and I remember that Mrs. Weldon, who, with all her eccentricities, was a very wonderful woman, in criticising a lecture of mine said, "You must get the soft palate of a singer as hard as a brow, the soft palate is the inception of the voice which must be hardened." But you do not find any attention in the vocal chords. In the same way I should say with regard to the eyes of painters, though I believe the blue eye characterized Turner, William Hunt, Millais, and a number of other living painters, noted as colorists; still there are many fine colorists who have not blue eyes. So I say there may be something in Miss Ellis's contention as to the peculiarities of the external ears of these great composers, but I do not think it had anything to do with their being musicals, because I think you would find these conditions in people who are not musicals, and many musicals whose ears did not conform to Miss Ellis's type, certainly with regard to the inequality of the ears. Though we are supposed to be symmetrical beings, as a matter of fact we are not. There is hardly a person living in the civilized world who is perfectly symmetrical in features—especially in the nose, for example. There are many people who have a symmetrical soft palate, and symmetrical ears and eyes; but I certainly have never cared much whether the ears were symmetrical or not, because we look inside the ear, and rarely, except in the case of deformation, look at the outside. Although I can hardly admit that I should have been more convinced of the accuracy of Miss Ellis's views as to the influence of the shape of the external ear, her remarks would have carried more weight could we have seen photographs of the actual ear instead of rough diagrams from paintings or models. For instance, the man who took Paganini's likeness probably paid but little attention to the details of his ears. The ear is a feature particularly neglected by painters—more than any other part of the face—and it, to my mind, quite spoils a portrait to see the careless way the ear has been dashed in; so that these old engravings are not to me of the value they would have been if they were photographs or models. You have to consider the ear from the position of the instrumentalist or composer. The moment we speak of a composer we think of Beethoven; Miss Ellis alluded to him. Beethoven is supposed to have had three periods. His last I have read was crude, hard, and unsympathetic because of his deafness. On the other hand, many modern critics regard this last period as his

most mature and most perfect. I have heard he did not write well for the voice because he was deaf; but I have heard the name of Wagner, who was not deaf. Certainly the whole history of Beethoven shows that the musician's ear is something that cannot be analysed; it is an irrefragable gift bestowed by the Almighty, and not dependent on any physical consideration of the outside ear. As to the ear of the Instrumentalist, in the paper I read on "The Voice as a Musical Instrument" before the Association a quarter of a century ago—I am not sure, Sir, whether you were present, but I remember several now present who were—I recommended for the training of the voice that singers should play a stringed instrument in order to train the ear, and it is a curious thing that it is the stringed instrument players who most of all are liable to suffer in the performance of their work from deafness. Their case is very similar to that of a sportsman, who will often get deaf in the ear that is most exposed to the barrel side of his gun. Players on wind instruments are much more liable to suffer from affections of the throat or chest, but I remember a case in one of two flautists who played side by side. He told me he was constantly getting the note of his colleague's part into his ear, and that this interfered with his perception of his own part. In the case of the singer the importance of hearing correctly is very great, as you all know. If a singer sings flatter than he should, he may be simply out of condition, but if he sings sharp it demonstrates an impairment of the correctness of his perception. I had to translate a book written by a Frenchman on Deafness, in which he said there was a proverb that a man shouted like a deaf one. In my translation I put a note that that proverb was not known to Englishmen, and that a person deaf from what is called conductive deafness usually speaks softly, because he hears sounds louder than they are, while a person deaf from disease of his auditory nerve often speaks at a characteristically high pitch. This explains the remark about Beethoven that Miss Ellis made; he heard sounds with extreme loudness—what we call hyperacusis—and I have seen cases of musicians who have in their brain a musical phrase or sound—something perhaps of their own invention, which has troubled them just the same as noise in the ear will trouble the deaf people who are not musical. I have met many musicians who suffer from a highly sensitive nerve to certain sounds; that is the penalty I suppose of education. The following anecdote illustrates the importance of hearing to the singer. Mr. David James, the actor, had a very beautiful singing voice, but on one occasion he found it out of order. I discovered nothing whatever wrong with his vocal organ, but there was a high degree of deafness, caused by impacted wax. This removed, his voice was at once restored. A still more celebrated musician—a great conductor—

known to all of us, came to me. Those acquainted with him are aware what a highly sensitive and impressionable man he is. He was in a state of despair. He said with great excitement his hearing was going; he could not conduct his orchestra. I found the same course. The patient on regaining his hearing almost threw his arms round me, saying that I had saved his life; but it did not prevent him from coming to me again six months after, in the same state of excitement, to be again relieved from the same slight ear trouble. There are several people who have a musical ear who are deaf to outside sounds. The late Lord Ernest Bruce was a great theatre-goer, but was so deaf that you had to shout in his ear, nevertheless, he could tell—at least he expressed the opinion—whether a singer was singing as well as usual or not. The tendency of my remarks you will see is to show that we must first know the full physiology of hearing, and then must remember that the condition of hearing depends not only on the health of the individual, but also on the health of the organ itself.

MISS CHAMBERLAIN.—I should just like to add that since humanity was created there have been no two persons alike. There have been no two ears quite alike; so it may be impossible for two persons to hear alike.

MR. WILSON.—If I might be allowed to offer a few remarks regarding the physics of hearing, there are one or two points Mr. LENOX BROWN made on which I should like to say a few words. I was recently a demonstrator to Dr. SILVANO THOMPSON, and so am in touch with recent developments in this connection. I may say that the theory of CURTI'S fibres is open to revision. There are a few facts which do not agree with the theory, and there are opposition theories already formulated. The whole matter being not quite understood, any new views properly put forward in a scientific manner are likely to be of great value. I must say I was disappointed that among so many deductions and so few facts. If we have a person with a scientific reputation behind the deductions they may be accepted, but when the deductions are advanced without the facts, one is obliged to ask for the facts. If this view of a connection between the shape of the external ear and musical ability can possibly be supported by statistics—though I see no connection on physical grounds, and Mr. LENOX BROWN has stated the same on physiological grounds—if the theory can be backed by statistics, it becomes of great value both to the physiologist and to the physician. So I hope Miss HILL will not be discouraged, but rather try to advance her theory in the way I have suggested. There are scientific magazines that would be glad to receive a statistical article on the subject. While I am on my feet I should like to ask if Miss

Edin can throw any light on a peculiarity of my own hearing which I have only recently discovered and which seems quite inexplicable. I am fond both of whistling and of playing the piano, and curiously my hearing for whistled notes is a fourth out with my hearing for piano notes. While my whistling, though a fifth high, sounds in perfect harmony to myself, and I can follow with facility complicated changes of harmony, the result to others is unrecognising. Curiously too, I can whistle correctly above G! I can play a note that is sung, or whistle a note that is whistled correctly, but I cannot whistle a note that is played or sung except by calculation.

Mr. LEMON BROWN.—I fancy the compass of whistling corresponds to the compass of the voice. Perhaps our friend in whistling is beyond the compass of his singing voice.

Mr. WATSON.—I can whistle over three octaves.

CHAUNCEY.—I should like to say a few words on one or two remarks of Dr. LEMON BROWN. I hardly think Miss Edin would venture to say that for the three periods of Beethoven's work the shape of the ear was altered. With regard to some of his music of the last period, there are a good many musicians who think that though he could, of course, hear with his eyes, yet if he had afterwards heard with his ears what he had written he might have modified and re-written some of it. Now, has not ear-training very much to do with the whole of this question? There are persons musically inclined who like music just in an ordinary way to the end of their lives. But sometimes these persons are moved to listen to "good" music, then to take an interest in it, then to enjoy a measure of culture, and, at last, to become enthusiastic musicians. Sir George Grove is an instance; he only liked music a little till he went to the Crystal Palace. You all know what a deal he did for music afterwards. Surely it was simply training and not an alteration of the ear in his case. A great many persons think that our musical system is perfect and complete in all ways. I am not inclined to accept that position myself. You know that the systems of the Hindus and Arabs, and some other nations, include much smaller intervals in their scale of musical sounds than ours, and they can detect differences of pitch that we hardly notice. The Indians employ something like twenty-two intervals in their octave. Is not this power merely a question of training? If we had been born in India, doubtless we could do it as well as they; whereas, being trained in European music, we measure it by European standards, and appreciate nothing else. I was struck by that remark of Mr. LEMON BROWN about singing flat and sharp. That is my experience also. People sing flat when they are not well; but when they sing sharp they had better leave off—they are

chronic ear troubles and are done for. As to hearing sounds or musical phrases in our head, it is quite common to hear singing in the ears. If one is not well we can hear in our heads, so to speak, all sorts of music. This clearly can have nothing to do with our ears, it is mental. Mr. Wedderson said truly that in trying to arrive at a conclusion in such a matter as this we want plenty of facts, actual photographs and statistics, because it is very unsafe to draw deductions from the ears of any one man, such as Beethoven, Stinner, Furry, or Mozart. We must get a large number of cases, and then we shall be able to judge whether a theory of outer contour is worthy of consideration. As has been pointed out, if we had had enlarged photographs we might have come to some conclusion as to how much and in what way the contour of the outer ear really has to do with music. I will now ask Miss Ellis to favour us with some remarks on what has been said on her paper.

Miss ELLIS.—I should like to say that these pictures, with the exception of Figs. 2, 3, and 4, were all taken direct from nature. So the facts there are really facts, and my deductions are the result of my going through hundreds of autheutic pictures of ears for this paper, and very many thousands in the course of preparing my book, never finding one of my deductions fail. But I did not know you wanted statistics, or I could easily have given a paper on them. I have also studied the whole ear for many years past in relation to identification and physiognomy. It is not that the shape gives hearing; but it gives the relative of the kind of hearing. It is quite true that babies show at once whether they are musical or not. It is not easy to train the owner of an anatomical office to be a musician. As to hearing twenty-two musical sounds in the octave, I could always hear them without any trying, I suppose because both eardrums and both mallei in my own ears are wide, and I have found that will indicate attention to all kinds of musical sounds. I have looked at photographs of all the nations in the world, and I find one cannot tell by the shape of an ear whether it belongs to any particular nation, because they vary according to the owner's particular powers. I have drawings of black and white and brown people. I did not know you wanted these facts; but I had collected them and made my deductions from them. I brought these specimens because they were striking illustrations of the subject. I thought they would show they had facts behind them. You often observe that a face is intelligent, though you may not know what particular details indicate the intelligence, and you treat your children in accordance with those indications. The ear is often not fully grown till about fourteen years of age. You can tell what kind of music a child

will learn best by the indications afforded by the shapes of the orifices and the incils. If the right ear is wider than the left they will get on much better with their music while they are young, but they may not stick to it; if on the other hand the left ear is wider than the right, they may seem slow while they are young, but they will develop later. These different forms do not seem to hear music in the same way. It is really a sort of physiognomical operation, and I have never known it to fail in a single case. I have looked through hundreds and thousands of portraits, particularly all the photographs I could find.

Chairman.—I shall have to ask you now to move a vote of thanks to Miss Elks. Her theory is that as the face is the mirror of the mind, so, if I understand rightly, the contour of the outer ear is the mirror of the internal mechanism with which musicians are specially gifted. May I suggest that in preparing her paper for our volume of "Proceedings," she enlarge it a little, and give us some more facts, together with tabulated deductions, and show how the ears of musicians differ from the non-musical.

Mr. J. FRANK BARRA.—It is only just to Miss Elks to mention that before this meeting she, without knowing my particular branch of the medical profession, informed me that I had the "organist's ear." I am bound to say that her diagnosis was perfectly correct.

The vote of thanks was then passed unanimously.

JUNE 15, 1927.

A. H. D. PRENDERGAST, Esq., M.A.,
IN THE CHAIR.

"CHROMATICISM" IN HARMONY.

By HERBERT WHITNEY, M.A., LL.M., F.R.C.O.

MR. CHAIRMAN, LADIES AND GENTLEMEN.—Before I begin my paper, I wish to say how highly I value the privilege of putting my ideas before you on this occasion. As regards my subject, I might say that I have given it a good deal of thought for a long time past, and it is one which I should probably not have worked out but for the kindly encouragement at the outset of your late lamented President, Sir John Stainer. I may also say that your esteemed Secretary took me by surprise some ten or twelve days ago by asking me if I were prepared to come forward at this time. I was not altogether prepared, but I shall endeavour to do my best.

Thus, then, to some extent is my excuse if you should find my paper lacking in coherence, or sufficiency of examples, the collecting of which I had left so a more convenient season.

It requires some courage to bring forward one's ideas on so controversial a subject as chromatic harmony has proved to be in the past, but there is perhaps one consolation, however, that it is, I believe, no quite a new aspect of the subject that I am here to speak, and if this may be the means of taking your critical aspect somewhat seawards, I shall be only too delighted. Let me say that I do not for one moment believe in introducing controversial matter into a student's text book. I should certainly advise every student to study some systematic work on harmony and modulation, and also to gain facility both in students' and composers'

counterpoint, before he avails himself of the freedom of present-day writing, the *chromatic possibilities* of which might be synthesized into what I would call *Composers' Harmonies*. In composers' counterpoint we become acquainted with the possibilities of part-writing as it actually exists to-day. In composers' harmony, one should get to know something of the wonderful co-relationship of keys, as exemplified in the enlarged boundaries of modern tonality, and in the use of the chromatic chords appertaining to these keys; and this subject, I venture to believe, can be conveniently studied by taking the principle of chromaticism as a basis.

Several attempts have been made in the past to systematize the relations between the diatonic and chromatic elements. We have had the system of Dr. Day built upon an imagined coincidence of the ordinary system of superimposed thirds with the product of that acoustical phenomenon known as the series of "harmonics," which theory "requires a wrong application of the laws of acoustics and a complex multiplication of notes." There is also the Continental system of chromatic alteration built upon the convenient but misleading plan of giving the same alphabetical name to two entirely different natural sounds. There is also a system of chromatic harmony derived from the harmonic contents of a key and those of its tonic and relative minors, a plan I think equally misleading, since these "harmonic contents" are derived from the scales in question, and scales are but *secondary products*. In the present attempt to put the matter on a proper basis, it has been felt to be necessary to go to the fountain head and consider the subject *de novo*. To proceed then:

The word "chromatic" comes from a Greek word signifying colour, which, in connection with music, "could be used, and was used, to describe certain alterations in the tuning of the tetrachord, which was said to be coloured by these tunings."¹ It might be noted that with the alteration of one or two notes of the tetrachord by the third, half, or three eighths of a tone, the resultant did not, in any case, come out as a *synthetic* progression. Hence the word chromatic, which we see has no real connection with sound or music, has come by a side issue to be connected with a scale consisting of *semitones* only, and as contrasted with diatonic matter, to be applied to elements which are foreign to the prevailing key or tonality. In defense of what I hold to be a new word coined to depict a new principle, I might also mention the allied words "chromatic," meaning the colour of colours and "achromatism," meaning "devoid of a stage of colouring."

¹ G. F. Abdy Williams.

CHROMATIC HARMONY, then, may be defined as that which is for the time being foreign to the prevailing tonality. Examples of chromatic harmony may consist of (1) COMPLETE PASSAGES or of (2) SINGLE CHORDS.

CHROMATIC TONALITY.—When a single chord, characteristic of some foreign key, is introduced in the middle of a composition, we agree to call this a chromatic chord; but we insist on its being immediately followed by the prevailing quality. This being so, I contend that by substituting for this single chord a complete passage or progression in the same foreign key—followed, like it, by the previously prevailing tonality—the same principle of chromatisme is being duly carried out, the latter being only a magnified instance of the former.

It is admitted that progressions and not chords define a key, therefore a chromatic progression may be used to define and substantiate the term CHROMATIC KEY, which term of course is only used in a subordinate sense.

(The fact that the inclusion of a foreign progression, or passage from a foreign tonality or chromatic key, presents the phenomenon of a temporary transition or modulation, does not affect the case.)

CHROMATISME then may be used to define the temporary inclusion of a foreign element within the prevailing tonality; and this element, as previously mentioned, may consist of (1) COMPLETE PASSAGES or of (2) SINGLE CHORDS. In the former case a foreign or chromatic key or tonality is temporarily set up, and an analysis of instances of such reveals the fact that the keys of the flat sixth, flat third, flat second, major third, major sixth, and major second occur in this connection more frequently than any others.

Note.—The chromatic element may also be major or even consist of single notes. See Nos. 1 and 2, from Brahmsen's Violin Concerto and also his Rhapsody Series, Op. 107 (follows).

Ex. 1. BRAHMESEN, Violin Concerto, Op. 41

The image shows two staves of music. The top staff is for the Violin, and the bottom staff is for the Piano. The key signature has one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 3/4. The violin part starts with a G4, followed by a chromatic descent: F#4, F4, E4, D4, C4, B3, A3, G3, F3, E3. The piano part starts with an E3, followed by a chromatic ascent: F3, F#3, G3, G#3, A3, A#3, B3, B#3, C4, C#4, D4, D#4, E4. A dynamic marking 'f' is placed above the piano part. Below the piano part, there is a marking 'T.R.M. of 12' and four vertical lines representing the intervals of the chromatic scale: 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, 1/5.

Note.—T.R.M. of 12, means that the Faculty represented is that of the relative major of the sub-dominant.

BARTHOLOMÆ, Sonata, Op. 101 (Andante)

Ex. 2.

T. 1. & 2. marc.

Key Sp. T. 1. & 2. marc. Key of Sp. resumed at 2 bars.

NOTE.—It cannot here represent $\text{Op}^{\text{m}} \text{ minor}$. The key of the flat is minor in case, and in this case the minor mode does not develop till the second appearance of the key suggested.

PRINCIPAL CHROMATIC KEYS.—The group of principal chromatic keys, as we may term it, may be sub-divided into two other groups—one from the flat side of the key and the other from the sharp side—and these, as it were, of sharp and flat keys, suggest their counterpart in the central triad of diatonic keys—viz., those of the tonic and its fifth above and below.

Sharp Triad Central Triad Flat Triad

Ex. 3.

The one group may be described as being built up on the flat sixth of the respective notes of the central triad, the other group on the major sixth. The key of the major supertonic, it might be noted, is comparatively rarely used. Examples of the above chromatic keys may be found in any standard work. For the present it may suffice to mention an odd example of each case.

Examples of Chromatic Keys:—

Flat sixth.—Beethoven. *Andante in F*, Op. 33 (Students' Ed., bar 17).

Flat second.—Beethoven. *Andante in F*, Op. 33 (Students' Ed., bar 13 from end).

Flat third.—Schubert. Op. 78 (Peter's Ed., *f* on p. 64).

Major sixth.—Gounod. "Faust." Introduction, bars 17-20 from end.

Major third.—Gounod. "Faust." Vocal Score, p. 23.

Major second.—Mozart. Quartet in G.

The three flat keys are not so remote as they appear, since they are related to a central key through its tonic major, of which the flat third—its relative major—appears as the most nearly related key, with the flat sixth and flat second as the two flat keys next in order.

SECONDARY CHROMATIC KEYS.—In addition to the above principal chromatic keys there remains to be considered the chromatic use of the most nearly related keys of the tonic, viz.:—

Examples.

- (1) Relative minor of tonic. Schubert, Op. 34, bars 9 and 10.
- (2) Sub dominant } frequent.
- (3) Dominant }
- (4) Relative minor of the sub-dominant. Mendelssohn's "Lotus-song," p. 43, Novello (bar after A), Vocal Score.
- (5) Relative minor of the dominant. Mendelssohn's "Elijah" ("If with all your hearts"), bars 14 to 17.
- (6) Dominant minor. Bach's "St. Matthew" Passion ("See the Saviour"), Novello's 3rd Ed., p. 158, bars 4 to 7.
- (7) Sub dominant minor. Beethoven's Sonata, Op. 112 (Allegro), see Ex. on p. 222.

It will be seen that I have named the apparently most remote chromatic keys as the principal ones. Distance in this case leads enchantment, and no doubt accounts for their pre-eminence in the production of powerful effects. The value of secondary chromatic keys might also be said to vary directly as their remoteness of relationship. There is one point I ought mention here, and that is, a chromatic key is not merely confined to the interpolation of a bar or so, but can consist of a complete motive, subsection, section, or even complete movement of a cyclical work, so long as the balance

of tonality, so to speak, is not overweighted. Where, however, there are several alternating sections in different keys as in the following, from Chopin's *Polonaise in A flat*, Op. 22, in which the keys fall thus, A flat, B flat minor, A flat, B flat minor, &c., the prevailing key should be selected as the standpoint (A flat in this case):—

Chopin, *Polonaise in A flat*, Op. 22.

Ex. 4

Ex. 5

RELATIVITY OF KEY.—It has been pointed out that the major scale indicates two leading notes, one of which, as Sir John Stainer says, tends to preserve the existing key, and the other to lead out of it into the key of the sub-dominant (Ex. 5). Therefore the natural tendency of modulation from any major key is to its sub-dominant, an association fully borne out by the smoothness of the tonic triads (Ex. 6) compared with the brilliancy and more disturbing effect of those built on the supertonic (Ex. 7).

Ex. 6

Ex. 7

This modulatory tendency does not displace the relationship of the relative minor of the tonic, which may be considered as still more intimate through its *modal* connection. The harmonic minor scale of the tonic may be observed possessing three leading notes, from which it will be seen



that it contains close bonds of union with the adjacent keys of the tonic and the sub-dominant, and so can be said to occupy an intimate position with regard to the same.

I think that to an unbiased hearer, the comparative effects of key disturbance as given in Ex. 9 (where the conditions are as nearly as possible the same) is quite patent.

Ex. 9

The notation shows two staves. The top staff has notes G, A, B, C, D, E, F#, G. The bottom staff has notes G, A, B, C, D, E, F#, G. Brackets and arrows indicate the following intervals: C to G (labeled 'to C'), F# to G (labeled 'to A'), and D to G (labeled 'to D').

It does not follow that because the dominant is a conventional medium for the association of legal answers and sonata secondary themes, that it is necessarily the most closely related to the tonic.

Indeed, the reason why the dominant is so acceptable a key for a second theme is (1) that the new idea is presented in a strikingly contrasted key, and (2) the *seizi* (which is now in the relative position of sub-dominant) most naturally follows in the concluding section as the key most nearly related to the dominant.

It is a remarkable fact that the greater part of the system of related keys leans to the flat side, and it is worthy of note, that a major key modulates mostly (with the exception of its relative major) to the sub-dominant of its relative major, or to its own sub-dominant minor.

The conclusion comes in, then, is based upon what I think is apparent from actual mental effect, viz., that the key of the relative minor of the tonic, and the key of the sub-dominant,

are more nearly related to the central key than is that of the dominant—the former from its close modal relationship to its relative major, and the latter from its lesser effect of key disturbance, as compared with the dominant.

It will therefore be seen that the relativity of key as set forth here, is not based upon the mathematical relationship of the respective tones, as in the Day theory, but on their inherent relationship, in which mode plays an important part.

Duality of Mode.—Before considering the contents of the chromatic keys, it might be as well to dilate upon the influence of the tonic minor key.

Sir John Steiner has said in his "Treatise on Harmony" that in modern music "the connection between the major and its tonic minor is much closer than was formerly the case." He also speaks of those modern writers "in whose works this mixture of tonic major and tonic minor is becoming such an important element that chords are being formed of an admixture of both tonalities." It may not be too much to assume that this "elusive fluctuation between the major and minor modes, now so characteristic a feature of modern art," justifies the assertion that, for purposes of key relationship, these modes may be considered as being on an equal platform, and, in fact, as constituting a dual key. As an example of fluctuation between major and minor, see Ex. 10, from Mendelssohn's Organ Sonata, No. 2.

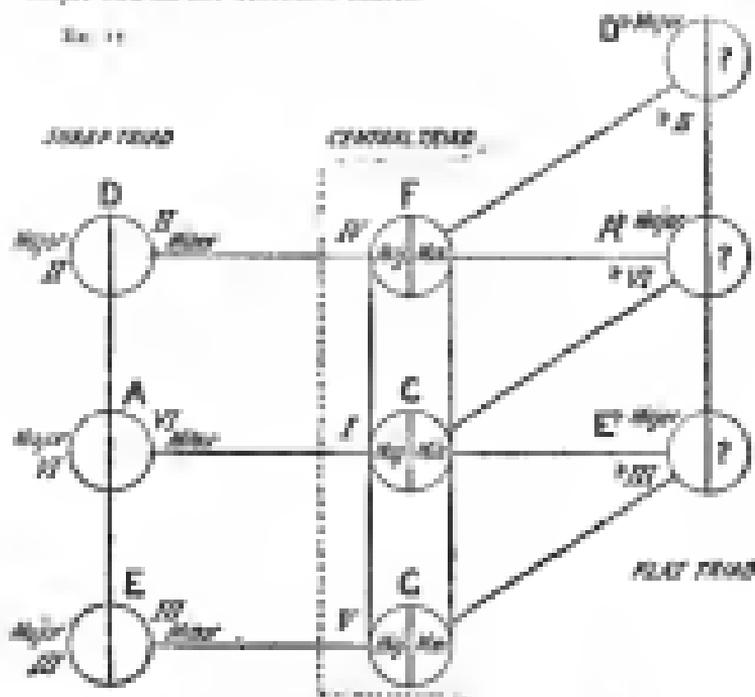


The principle of duality of key, or mode was recognized in 1936 by Zarlin, who at that time emphasized the fact that the difference between the major and minor chords was not in the kind, but in the position of the third. It is upon this principle of duality of key, though differently applied to day, that I beg to assert that the whole superstructure of modern chromatic harmony rests. Pursuing this principle, allow me to show you a diagram demonstrating duality of key or mode and its influence on the relativity of keys.

One should notice that the keys of the sharp triad are built up on the major sixth of the tonic, sub-dominant, and dominant, and can be directly derived through the relative minors of the tonic. On the other hand, the keys of the flat triad are obtained from the relative majors of the fourth above (i.e., reckoning from the minor standpoint), or through the sub-dominant of the relative majors.

You will remember that the most closely related keys from the minor standpoint, as seen in Ex. 22, are the relative major and its sub-dominant minor.

Ex. 23

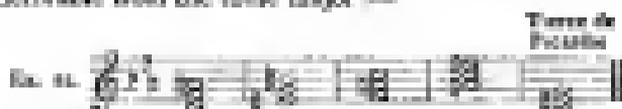


Note that each key is shown in its dual aspect. The dashed line shows the sphere of relationship from the minor standpoint.

The dual key of C major and minor, with its attendant relatives A minor and E-flat major (from the minor side), might be described as a trinity of dual relationship from which all the rest are derived. It is, perhaps, not inappropriate that the systematic attraction of one key for another should be portrayed by a diagram, similar to that used to show the wonderful and unaccountable force of molecular attraction on the part of one chemical element for another.

CHROMATIC CHORDS.—We can now proceed to the consideration of chromatic chords. Since a whole key, or complete progression in that key, can be used chromatically, it stands to reason that any single chord characteristic of, and belonging to that key can be used in the same way, such a chord being called a chromatic chord.

ROMANTIC MINOR CHORDS.—In accordance with the views here assumed, I shall not consider the chords borrowed from the minor mode as chromatic, since they do not belong to a separate tonality, but are part and parcel of the dual key as above mentioned. Dr. Vincent, in his book on Harmony, does not consider that such chords can cause a modulation, but rather that they form a progression. Moreover, the term modulation, which was originally used to denote only a change of mode, is now used for a change of key. I would be inclined to favour the old meaning and use the term transition for a change of key. In Ex. 13 we have instances of chords available in the minor key and derivable from the tonic major:—



One would hardly consider the Tonic de Picardie (though it usually occupies such a commanding position) as a chromatic chord. Neither, on the other hand, can it be consistently argued that similar chords from the minor mode available for use in the major, and occupying comparatively subordinate positions, can be called chromatic. The true aspect of the question then is to consider them as relative modal chords. The following chords available in C major are borrowed from the minor mode:—



In Ex. 14 we have an instance of the use of a minor common chord in a major key:—

Bach's Hungarian Dance, No. 18

Ex. 14.

CONTENTS OF CHROMATIC RAYS.—It might be instructive to give a list of the principal contents of the chromatic rays, both principal and secondary, any single chord from which is available in this connection.—

From Relative Major of Tonar



Here follow instances of some of the chromatic chords given in Ex. 14:—

Missa: Omgeld

Ex. 16

with Ped. ♩

Ped. ♩ Dominant chord of G, minor

Detailed description: This musical example consists of two staves, piano (top) and bass (bottom). The piano staff shows a sequence of chords: G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), and G major (G-B-D). The bass staff shows a sequence of chords: G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), and G major (G-B-D). A fermata is placed over the final G major chord in both staves. The instruction 'with Ped. ♩' is written below the piano staff, and 'Ped. ♩ Dominant chord of G, minor' is written below the bass staff.

Missa: Omgeld

Ex. 17

Key of B \flat

with Trem. Ped.

Sub-dominant chord of Key of B \flat

Detailed description: This musical example consists of two staves, piano (top) and bass (bottom). The piano staff shows a sequence of chords: B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), and B-flat major (B-flat-D-F). The bass staff shows a sequence of chords: B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), and B-flat major (B-flat-D-F). A fermata is placed over the final B-flat major chord in both staves. The instruction 'with Trem. Ped.' is written below the piano staff, and 'Sub-dominant chord of Key of B-flat' is written below the bass staff.

Quint: Song Der Wald

Ex. 18

Repetitive chord from 16,

Detailed description: This musical example consists of two staves, piano (top) and bass (bottom). The piano staff shows a sequence of chords: G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), and G major (G-B-D). The bass staff shows a sequence of chords: G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), G major (G-B-D), and G major (G-B-D). A fermata is placed over the final G major chord in both staves. The instruction 'Repetitive chord from 16,' is written below the bass staff.

Duetto "Stabat," No. 8

Ex. 19

Sub-dominant chord from 17, minor

Detailed description: This musical example consists of two staves, piano (top) and bass (bottom). The piano staff shows a sequence of chords: B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), and B-flat major (B-flat-D-F). The bass staff shows a sequence of chords: B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), B-flat major (B-flat-D-F), and B-flat major (B-flat-D-F). A fermata is placed over the final B-flat major chord in both staves. The instruction 'Sub-dominant chord from 17, minor' is written below the bass staff.

Venez's Example. "Die Frau."

Ex. 20.

Dominant chord of G.

Ex. 21.

D minor. Hungarian Dance, No. 14.

Ex. 22.

E major. Wagner, Valkyrie Overture.

Ex. 23.

G minor. "Herrmann"?

See also Ex. 27 by Liszt, and Examples occurring in Sections on the augmented triad and the augmented sixth.

MODULATION.—With regard to modulation the question may arise, at what point does a chromatic chord merge into

a change of key, and as the chord of the seventh of a foreign key when used chromatically is often followed by the chord of its own tonic, it is necessary to state that some theorists claim that such a progression absolutely defines the key, and therefore counts a modulation; others, however, with Macfarren, hold that such progression if followed by some chord characteristic of the original key, is essentially chromatic. It appears to me, however, that a cadential movement of the bass from dominant to tonic, especially when the two chords occupy strong rhythmical positions, has a powerful influence in setting the new tonality, and it is perhaps as well to suggest that in order to avoid a change of key, the progression of the bass should proceed by step, and that any chord or chords tending to weaken the chromatic nature should occupy intermediate positions of weak rhythmical nature. From a previous discussion which took place on this point in March, 1894, I gather that Professor Froot is of opinion that a dominant seventh succeeded by a tonic chord, makes a complete modulation in all cases. On the other hand, Professor Nicols gives me this quotation:—

Ex. 192

(No change of key.) (Transition to key of G)

(Transition to key of G)

in which he says that total satisfaction is not found until the final chord of C is reached. In fact, this only bears out my own views, as the tonic chord of G here is on a weak beat, and takes by step. Reverse the accent, however, as in Ex. a, and a modulation is set up at once; even when the confirmation chord is placed only on a medium accent as in Ex. c, a change of key is experienced. Dr. Hermann, in that curiously obscure book "*Harmony simplified*,"

as p. 177 makes the observation that "accented beats are really the beacons of the harmony"—and so they are. One can easily see that it is purely a question of accent simply, or the same combined with identical movement of the bass. Before leaving the subject of chromatic chords there are a few points which I would like to mention:—

1. When the introductory chords of a chromatic passage are ambiguous, as in:—

Ex. 14. Chopin, Op. 10, No. 3.

The key is not decided till the quarter passage is reached.

it is necessary to analyse from the standpoint of the context.

a. The return to the tonic may be made by the means of a chord or passage in the key of the dominant without impairing the general impression, and, as already stated, the tonic, which is now in the relative position of sub-dominant, naturally follows as the most nearly related key for the concluding section. The return through the dominant key has the same effect as the use of supertonic harmony preceding a perfect cadence, i.e., it emphasizes the sense of finality, and the effect is that of a compound cadence, in which the ear groups the supertonic harmony with what follows (as dominant of the dominant) rather than with what precedes.

In the manner the effect of a chromatic chord or passage (as in divisions 4 and 5 below) will be left to belong to what follows and should be so analysed:—

Ex. 15. Bach, Notebook for Anna Bach, No. 4.

Augmented 6th on G#.

Note.—The augmented sixth passage is felt to belong to the following key of G#, and is so analysed. The supertonic chord emphasises this feeling.

But, on the other hand, a departure from the tonic major through the dominant major will generally be felt to come from the dominant itself.

3. If the chromatic key be a flat one, then the return through the dominant has the effect of what I would call oscillation, which is really only a magnified instance of the use of a tonic discord followed by one on the supertonic. In the following example the "oscillation" is from dominant to sub-dominant:—

BETHOVEN,
"Pilgrimage of the Rose"

Ex. 26. Key of C, Key G, Key F.

4. A chromatic key may begin with a chord from another foreign key, and on rejoining the original key may do so through the means of another chromatic chord or subordinate chromatic progression.

5. A return from a chromatic key may be made to, or by means of, the tonic ariser mode.

6. Examples of chromatic tonality may contain within them other subordinate chromatic passages.

7. Closely woven sequential passages, the tonality of which progresses entirely or mostly by semitones, frequently nullify the temporary tonality.

Instances of Nos. 4, 5, 6 and 7 as above may be found in the following extract from Beethoven's Sonata, Op. 111, *Allegro*:—

BEETHOVEN, SONATA, OP. 111. *Allegro*

Ex. 27. Key C major. Ch. Prog. in C major. *Allegro*

8. A chord may begin with a chromatic chord or passage from a chromatic key, as, for instance, in the familiar Wedding March of Mendelssohn, which nominally in the key of C begins with a chromatic passage from E minor.

Before leaving the question of modulation it might be as well to say that modulatory analysis can be conveniently made on the system of considering the tonality in relation to each successive step in the process. For instance, a modulation may proceed by steps of a flat or major second, as in Ex. 27, or a flat sixth, or by the frequent plan of sub-dominant minors, as in Ex. 28.

Ex. 28

Continuar. - Basses solo.

Basso continuo.

D minor E minor A minor D minor

To resume, it will be seen then that the above scheme provides a major and minor common chord on every note of the chromatic scale, not one of which but can be linked by some note common to a chord belonging to the tonic major or minor mode. Hence every chromatic chord can be said to possess a dual relationship. Some of the rarer forms no doubt seem a little remote, but the very remoteness indeed constitutes the charm when used artistically. It has been remarked that any two chords in the hands of a genius could be put together and would come out all right. Fortunately, or unfortunately, as it may be, we are not all geniuses, and some system of routine study is necessary for ordinary mortals. The value of the above classification therefore lies in the fact that, to the mature student and artist, it lays open at a glance the chromatic chords (omitting the augmented sixth) available in use at the present day. Modern art, however, is not stationary, and the list, therefore, is not a conclusive one.

Chromatic Alteration.—It is worthy of note that the chromatic triads on the flat second and major second are represented in Ex. 29; also the augmented triads on the tonic, sub-dominant, dominant, and flat sixth, which Continental theorists accept for by chromatic alteration of common chords belonging to the tonic. This, by-the-by, is a convenient enough theory, but not one, I think, which gives any conception of their true relationship to the tonic. Indeed, one is driven to the conclusion that Continental schools of

thought takes up a very conservative standpoint as regards the higher discords, and a very utilitarian one as regards chromatic chords. Before proceeding, it seems opportune to emphasize the assertion that there cannot be any real alteration of any individual sound; there is no possible connection between B and B sharp, neither as separate entities nor as constituents of a triality in which one of the notes is temporarily modified. B sharp cannot become B, nor can B become B sharp. Neither, to be consistent, can there be any connection between C and C sharp or C flat as separate localities; C flat and C sharp serve merely as convenient links in modulating between the extreme sharp and flat keys. This brings me to the question of the chromatic scale.

Typical Chromatic Scale.—Suppose we consider the question of the selection of a melodic formula to consist of minor divisions than those of the diatonic form. Let us look at the question from the beginning, and we should be met by the query, of what number of steps shall this formula consist? Let us bear in mind that the word "Chromatic," as in chromatic scale, has etymologically really nothing to do with chromism. The question then will be entirely solved in an arbitrary manner according to taste or convenience. In European countries, owing to the predominating and arbitrary influence of keyboard instruments tuned on the equal temperament system, that number consists of twelve intervals. In Eastern countries, where they are not under this influence, the number is variable. It follows then that any system of chromatic passage, which is founded on a diatonic scale of twelve notes, is likewise an arbitrary one. This, then, is the position. We are confronted by theorists who say that A flat and G sharp cannot both exist in the key of C, and who insist that the so-called chromatic scale must consist of only twelve or, at most, of unmeasured intervals. My view is, that for harmonic purposes a modern chromatic scale must perforce consist of the whole number of harmonic intervals which are available from any one particular standpoint. On the other hand, for melodic purposes, it may consist of any number that is agreeable. Personally, as yet, I see no reason for altering the ordinary form of the chromatic scale as regards purely melodic passages. It is merely a matter of convenience. Perhaps I should say that modern composers do not as a rule make use of the whole of this series. In fact, it is possible to build up a sufficient series of major and minor triads without going beyond the bounds of the chromatic keys which I have pointed out are in general use; still they are there to draw upon. For instance, speaking of the key of C, the notes C flat, E double flat, and B double

But are not found in the chromatic keys in general use, but there is no doubt they are possible, and occasionally used, and, moreover, it is quite feasible that at some future time they may be even in general use. Why not, then, "face the music," so to speak, and instead of making tentative selections, give the whole scale as it is? This is not a matter for ordinary students, but for masters and practised thinkers. Remember that as long as we agree that twenty-one harmonic intervals are possible in any key, so long must we make our theoretic or harmonic chromatic scale to consist of that number. Observe the following scale. Each note of this scale (omitting the diatonic basis) represents some key with which harmonic relation is possible—that is to say, it represents all tonalities which have any note in common with the central scale. Notes within brackets represent chromatic keys not in general use:—

Ex. 29

| | | | |
|-------|---------------------|-------|----|
| E. M. | iv. | E. M. | |
| (ii) | (vii ^b) | (v) | v. |

E. M.

v.

In this example B sharp is inserted as characteristic of the key of F sharp, while A double flat and B sharp are deduced from the keys of C flat (below) and C sharp, are omitted, because these keys have no harmonic connection with C. The octave is omitted as being a harmonic duplicate.]

If we could agree to restrict the actual number of keys to those individually represented on an equal temperament keyboard, then the matter would be simplified, but otherwise we must take it as it is. At present, in the twelve-tone form, the chromatic scale as little satisfies modern requirements as does the old minor scale, with regard to the modern edgic harmonic key structure. Scales are artificial products, and it cannot be said that the evolutionary development, at least as regards the chromatic scale, has reached a final stage. The twelve-tone chromatic scale might consistently be called melodic, since it satisfies the need for a chromatic melodic formula for instrumental and vocal work, and the extended chromatic scale might then be fitly designated the theoretic or harmonic. I may mention a notable paragraph from Helmholtz, as quoted by Dr. Paley in his "Philosophy of Music," in which he says: "Hence it follows (and the

proposition cannot be too vividly present to the minds of our practical theoreticians and historians) that the system of scales and modes, and all the network of harmony founded thereon, do not seem to rest on any immutable laws of nature. They are due to esthetical principles which are constantly subject to change according to the progressive development of knowledge and taste." (The italics are mine.) Harmony, as we understand it, arose "from a combination of melodies sounded simultaneously," and it is avowed by Helmholtz that the coincidence of the acoustical series of harmonics with the ordinary superimposed system of thirds does not go further than the major common chord. Professor Fross, I may say, is of opinion that if we let into the key of C the whole series of chromatic chords proposed, "the whole theory of a key as containing twelve notes goes to the wall at once." Well, then, gentlemen, in that case I am afraid that the twelve-note chromatic scale, for theoretic purposes, will ultimately have to give way. It might be interesting to represent the views of Professor Niska on these questions as concerning to some extent with those held by Continental theorists. Professor Niska is of opinion that "a borrowed chord is an absurdity. The so-called borrowed chord is only in appearance the same chord in both keys, its tendencies being different on each. The combination of notes which form the dominant triad in G major bears on the tonic triad of that key; the super-tonic chromatic major chord in C major bears on the dominant triad, which, really, is a chord with two elements of unrest, whilst the tonic chord contains only elements of rest. Compare also the same combination of notes and its different character as tonic and sub-dominant in major, and as sub-dominant in minor." &c. Of chromatic notes, he says they are "subservient and subordinate to the diatonic contents of a tonality. They ought not to be regarded as something foreign to the locality or the key. They may be regarded as artificial leading notes, or modifications of the diatonic notes, by which the natural vocal or harmonic tendencies or the intended melodic drift are emphasized or momentarily altered." (See examples given.)



Professor Niska also says, "the keys to the mysteries of

CHROMATIC DISCORDS.—We will now touch on the most important constituents of the previously mentioned chromatic keys, viz. the discords built up on the dominant of each. Those belonging to the dominant and sub-dominant keys are known as discords on the supertonic and tonic respectively. There is no reason, however, why any constituent chord of any chromatic key should not be available theoretically, as it is in actual composition. We are thus able to enlarge the bounds of modern tonality by the inclusion of the discords built on the dominants of all the chromatically related keys. It is understood, of course, that the dominant discords appertaining to these keys may resolve on their own tonics, and still be accounted chromatic in the prevailing key. If such chord of resolution does not by rhythmical position, repetition, or by the aid of succeeding chords confirm the key which it temporarily suggests. It is from these chromatic discords that we can provide an explanation of the so-called augmented sixth. Sir Hubert Parry says in his article on Harmony in Grove, "that the augmented sixth is probably nothing more than the modification of a melodic progression of one of two parts." Exactly so; all harmonic combinations may be said to have originated in like manner. It is the theorist's part, as soon as these fortuitous combinations lose to some extent the association with their polyphonic combination, to consider the same to all intents and purposes as essential or constituent chords, when they thus become liable to resolution and combinations which would not have been possible in their original condition. Let me refer you to Ex. 30. We have here, in the first and last instances (marked x), definite chords, not mere melodic progression in one of the parts; it is surely then more to the point, instead of considering them from an exclusively contrapuntal point of view, to allow of an explanation which would correctly interpret the harmonic tendencies of these chords as represented on the staff. Before going further it might be necessary to say a word on the chord of the *sextessix*.

CHOICE OF THE THIRTEENTH.—I am aware that the Continental school, in common with some of our older theorists, deny the existence of chords of the thirteenth. In such a case it seems only necessary to state that to select a portion only of the limited series of chords, built up on the dominant of any key and to reject the rest, appears to me a somewhat arbitrary proceeding.

It is necessary to remember that Harmony, as we understand it, arises "from a combination of melodies sounded simultaneously." The accompaniment of a melody, first by octaves, fifths, fourths, and thirds, provides successive links in the evolution of the harmonic structure, and the gradual

superimposition of thirds, as far as was musically possible, was only a consistent though unconscious carrying out of the same principle. As previously pointed out, the attempted identification of such a series with the sequential phenomenon of harmonics is unnecessary, since the former is of aesthetic origin and unsuggested by the latter. In any case, it is held by Helmholtz, upon whose discoveries the principal theories of modern acoustics rest, that the *consonance cannot go further than the major common chord.* (Pole, "Philosophy of Music," pp. 245 and 296.) (See again paragraph as quoted by Dr. Pole from Helmholtz on p. 218.)

DUAL TERTIARISM.—It is possible that some prejudice may exist against the idea of dual tonality, or modality, as shown in what I would call the *dual thirteenth*.

It is, however, at least as consistent to borrow a minor thirteenth to use in a major chord over the same root, as it is to borrow what by courtesy might be called *minor diacords* for chromatic use in the major mode. (See Ex. 32.)



It is really only another example of duality of key or mode. In modern music a key must now be considered to consist equally of major and minor elements, and it will be found that it is this "mixture of tonalities," in the form of the *dual minor thirteenth and major sixth*, that supplies a simple explanation of the construction of the so-called *augmented sixth*. Thus it is a question, not of a dual root, but of a dual tonality.

Ex. 33—Key C.

AUGMENTED SIXTHS.—You will notice that the first chord given in Ex. 33 is a form of the *minor thirteenth* with a

dominant seventh. Omit the root, and you get a kind of augmented sixth similar to the French form, but without the sixth. This is important, as showing the connection between the chord of the thirteenth and the augmented sixth. For the sake of comparison I give, in Ex. 33, the ordinary minor sixth and thirteenth, first without the root, then with the root on the second and third beats, then with the sixth made major, but with root omitted, showing an inversion of the French form.

Below are examples of the augmented sixths belonging to the key of C, as derived from the central key and its dependencies (see Ex. 32). The initials I. G. F. denote the Italian, German, and French forms of the chord, and in each case the chord is resolved into a chord derived from the central scale. The false notation of the sixth is given in brackets.

Ex. 34 Key C.

From Sol. Major.

1. I. G. F.

2. From IV.

4. From V.

3. From Sol. M. of IV.

6. From Sol. M. of V.

5. From Flat III.

7. From Flat VI.

8. From Flat II.

Memorize.—Aug. sixth appear on C, D, F, G, A (all chromatic notes except the third and seventh), and on D \flat , E \flat , A \flat , B \flat (all diatonic notes except the flat third).

It will be noted that the first chord of each example is the quasi-augmented sixth form of the minor thirteenth, seventh, and third, forming a kind of link between the chord of the thirteenth and the characteristic French sixth. It will be also seen that the above chords appear not on the flat sixth of the tonic, but on the sub-dominant. Objection has been taken to this chord as being borrowed from the relative minor, where it occurs on the flat or minor sixth of that key. It is quite possible that the use of this originated in that way, but as I have pointed out in connection with harmonic combinations in general, when new associations are introduced they are followed by new conditions of resolution, and consequently by new derivations. The chord, however, as constituted from a dual mode, is undoubtedly fundamental, thus coinciding with the form used by Jakschke on the sub-dominant major.

Jakschke gives this chord—



the augmented sixth on the sub-dominant as resolving into the keys of C, A minor, D minor, and F major, as in Ex. 35.

Ex. 35.

The one in C coincides with No. 2 of Ex. 34, No. 2 turns out to be the usual one in use on the flat sixth, No. 4 coincides with the one from the dominant in Ex. 34, while No. 3 turns out to belong to the key of the flat seventh, and is quoted by Jakschke as being rarely used. I have not included it in the list, owing to the comparatively rare use of the flat seventh as a chromatic key. It is a curious fact that though the key of B flat (as connected with C) does not seem to have any general existence, it is quite a prominent harmonic feature of Scotch national music (for violas and pipes), as in "Ghalla Callan" and "Tullochgorran," no doubt owing to the mode in which much of it is written.

It is necessary to point out that as the form of the German sixth might be considered as synonymous with that of the dominant seventh, it is sometimes necessary to list incidentally as the real chromatic tendency in passing, as in Ex. 35 (4). Where no such list is given, the most closely

related tonality is attributed as Ex. 36 (b), the key of the flat third being nearer than that of the flat second.

Ex. 36

The musical notation for Ex. 36 consists of two staves. The upper staff is in treble clef and contains a sequence of chords: a triad with a flat second and a flat third, followed by a triad with a flat second and a natural third, and then a triad with a flat second and a flat third. The lower staff is in bass clef and contains a sequence of chords: a triad with a flat second and a flat third, followed by a triad with a flat second and a natural third, and then a triad with a flat second and a flat third. A circled '1' is located at the end of the lower staff.

It is interesting to note also that we have available, as in Exs. 32 and 34, a dominant seventh or its synonym (the German sixth), as well as a major and minor common chord, as every note of the tempered chromatic scale. Objection is sometimes raised that the effect of a German or Italian sixth is not like that of a dominant seventh. This, of course, is owing to surroundings (see paragraph 2, p. 218). The French sixth is the only really characteristic form, indeed, owing to the indefinite dominant aspect of the Italian and German forms, those instances occurring on $\flat 2$, $\flat 4$, $\flat 5$, $\flat 6$, and flat $\flat 6$, (in major), should rather be viewed as dominant seventh, unless the real tonality is otherwise incidentally hinted at. See Ex. 37, from Rameau:—

Ex. 37

The musical notation for Ex. 37 shows a treble staff with a melodic line and a bass staff with a chordal accompaniment. The treble staff has notes with accidentals and a circled 'K'. The bass staff has chords with accidentals. Labels include 'D major.' under the first measure, 'K' under the second measure, 'L. G. F.' under the third measure, and 'Aug. 6th in minor 6th.' under the fourth measure. A note in the bass staff is labeled 'Ex. 36 from key of flat 2'.

The passing note G in Ex. 37 (a) suggests that the chord is a dominant seventh from the key of the flat second rather than a German sixth (from the flat third), though the key thus represented is not so nearly related. In Ex. 37 (a), however, the chord would be classified as a varied form of the augmented sixth on account of the B natural which, in a consistent of the French form, and the *Ren.*, it will be noted, cannot appear in unharmonic guise.

Before concluding this section, one might point out an interesting resolution of the augmented sixth in Ex. 30, in

which the major ninth becomes minor, and also direct attention to remarkable instances of the augmented sixth by Schubert, Liszt, and Gade, in Ex. 38.

Ex. 38. SCHUBERT: "Bombarde." Liszt.

Key G.

Aug 6th
or 7th.

Aug 6th or 7th
(French)

Gade's "Crescendo."

Key G.

French 6th
or 7.

It is the habit of some theorists to write such chords as the augmented sixth in the last example to approximate movement in one or more of the parts. It is, however, more common that professors should be given to a harmonic explanation when the chord, with exception of attending pedal notes, can be definitely ascribed a dominant triad.

CHROMATIC RESOLUTIONS.—Some objection might be made to the upward resolution of the minor thirteenth, as shown in the chords of the so-called augmented sixth, but if the following resolutions of the seventh (see Ex. 39) marked "Good" and authorized by Jadassohn, be allowed (and there

Ex. 39

Ex. 40

seems to be no doubt of their good effect), possibly there may be no objection to similar resolutions of the minor thirteenth, in which the dominant influence may be said to be less strong, especially when a mere change of mode, as in Ex. 40, necessitates the ending of the thirteenth.

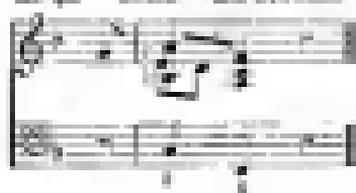
Modern practice indeed seems to be somewhat indifferent to the direction of the resolution of the seventh and higher discords, as long as it is by step. This, however, applies to non-cadential positions. Where a cadence occurs, or the effect of one can be simulated, as in Ex. 41, one of the notes appears to be bound by the ordinary rule, and the other seems to be free to leap.

Ex. 40.



In every case when the third leaps, the seventh resolves downwards by step, when the seventh leaps, the third resolves upwards by step (see also Exs. 34, 2 and 3, and 43, 2). I might also remind you of the familiar resolution of the thirteenth by leap, as in Ex. 42, from Grieg ("Ege Schwann"), and of the possible leap of a seventh to leading note in the part resolving a minor sixth. The new law thus evolved accounts also for the irregular resolution of the so-called secondary chords of the seventh, the added sixth, augmented sixth, and other discords. (See Exs. 47, 54, 55, and also Ex. 43 from J. S. Bach.)

Ex. 42. Grieg—"Ege Schwann."



In the latter example the minor thirteenth in the guise of the augmented sixth resolves by step, and the seventh in each

note resolves by leap; in each example there is a cadential effect.

No doubt the pleasure of the false notation used in the past has much to do with any objection to these apparently contrivance resolutions, which contrapuntal elegance and new chromatic relations have brought about.

FALSE NOTATION.—In *Ear, Bridge and Sawyer's* excellent book on Harmony the following words appear: "the addition of an accidental to a note of a chord frequently appears like a casual chromatic alteration of that note. . . . Theoretically, the chords that are thus created have received a derivation which makes their usual notation, as here given, wrong," as the chords mentioned a flat is generally represented as a sharp, as in the following example—

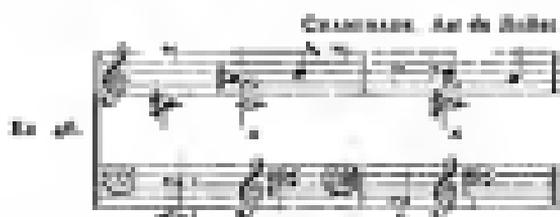


in order that the upward resolution may coincide with the usual preconceived idea. We are familiar with examples of what is called expedient false notation, in which the so-called supertonic and tonic minor sixth* is often written as though it were the chromatically-altered note itself," as in Ex. 45.

Ex. 45

In No. 4, the minor seventh also is altered, and the rising minor third-sixth appears also in the guise of an augmented fifth, as in Exs. 45 (3) and 44. "This expedient notation saves an accidental, but disguises the true origin and radical derivation of the chord." One can hardly grade the culpable slight expediency which these examples of false notation

lucur, but unfortunately the matter does not rest there. The habit of confounding the real notation is a growing one, and the question of expediency is apt to be lost sight of—so much so, that there are not wanting theorists of the older school who would come to the conclusion on this account alone that minor discords cannot rise in resolution, and that such instances require altered notation. Indeed, what has been described as the happy go-lucky method of all composers, from Beethoven downwards, of indicating chromatic accidentals, has so confused the real notation of the higher discords and all chromatic chords, that in analysing each case must be taken on its merits. See the following example from *Chromade* :—



in which the rising sixth is, marked by a sharp, the falling seventh by a flat. Therefore, in the interests of correct notation, it is greatly to be desired that, in the upward resolution of a minor discord, a chromatic and not a diatonic ascent should be used. Indeed, there seems to be some rooted aversion to the upward resolution of any minor discord, for instance :—



While no objection would be raised to Ex. 47, No. 1, on account of the downward resolution of the minor sixth A flat, as soon as the A flat rises, as in No. 2, demands would probably be made that the A flat should be transformed into G sharp, though it is difficult to see how the chromatic change could be upheld; and, however, allow that it is possible to borrow for chromatic use the characteristic augmented triad belonging to the sub-dominant minor, and all objection

vanishes; this of course does not shut out the use of its prototype from the relative minor, when its origin is cadential and other positions is clearly defined, as in No. 3. The same reasoning applies to the augmented triad borrowed from the relative minor of the dominant, as in No. 4, where the first chord by its attempted cadential movement towards a close in E minor may be classed as an augmented fifth, and likewise in No. 5, where the strong cadential movement in C marks it as a constituent of its own dominant. It seems, however, somewhat inappropriate to ascribe dominant origin to indefinite chords, such as the augmented and diminished triads formed of superimposed thirds on various degrees of the minor and major scale, unless they assume the tonal functions of a dominant discord, as in the following example from Schumann:—



I need hardly touch on the question of the false notation of the so-called augmented sixth, since it is due to the misunderstanding of the tonal relationship, and in the rare cases where it is right—as in the following examples from Brahms' Hungarian Dances (Ex. 49) and Gade's "Crossed" vocal score (Novello's Octavo Edition, p. 4) (Ex. 50) and in Ex. 51—it is probably a question of convenience or expediency of notation.

Brahms' Hungarian Dances for Duo, Book 1 (30)

Ex. 49

German title
T. R. M.

Two other instances of augmented triads by Wagner, and one by Strauss are given below.

Ex. 33. Wagner, "Siegfried Idyll."

Strauss.

Chromatic Errors.—In the section on "Chromatic Resolutions" and in that on "False Notations" I have treated of the effect of the cadence in defining the tenacity of doubtful discords, and likewise of the effect of cadential movement on the resolution of some of the higher discords. Suppose we investigate for a moment the principle of this "cadential effect." In Ex. 34, A, we have the plain plagal cadence; in B

Ex. 34

the effect of the cadence is still strong enough to make one overlook the altered upper part; in C the chord assumes what I would call an indefinite dominant aspect—that is to

say, a dominant structure, the result of which is only determined by the context. In this case, the very definite strong cadential effect is the bass fixes it at once as being in the key of C, though the leap in the bass induces the violation of the usual resolution of the seventh. This and the others are good examples of the superior power of the cadence, so that the ear perceives has to be satisfied with only a partial resolution by step of the discordant elements, the only difference being that in Ex. 54, a, we have a chord of *truly more definite dominant aspect*, brought about by the introduction of an E flat (represented as D sharp), that is to say, the minor thirteenth.

Melodic Substitutions.—An effort has been made lately by Mr. Hadew—from whose paper, with the exception of Ex. 8, these examples are quoted—to treat the D, in Exs. 2 and 3, as a harmonic equivalent for C. I am, however, inclined to regard these as instances of the assumption of the power of the cadence over the melodic upper part. As long as the effect of the cadence is maintained, substitutions of one note for another may take place in the melodic or upper part. The principle underlying the above cadential effect, therefore, I would prefer to call melodic substitution; one that necessarily is only available where there is a *fixed harmonic intent*, and akin to what I would call the principle of harmonic substitution, as set forth below. The further examples given by Mr. Hadew (Exs. 2 and 3) serve as instances of cadential resolution. In each case the sixth has to succumb to the superior power of the cadence. In Ex. 55 can be seen three examples of cadential resolution, from chants by Burnby, and two from Grieg. In the latter the bass of one example leaps a third, the bass of the other its inversion the sixth.

Ex. 54. From Chans by Burnby.

Grieg, Op. 31. Grieg, Op. 46.

For an instance of this see Ex. 38, a, quoted by Mr. Hadow, in which a dominant is substituted where tonic might continue, and the extract from Schumann, in Ex. 38, b, where the dominant B flat is substituted for C flat.

Ex. 38. *Schumann's "Momentane."* *Schumann's "Wägen."*

Key E \flat minor

Aug
as $\frac{3}{2}$

4. Temporary substitution of a concord for a discord, as in an ornamental resolution.

FALSE RELATION.—It is admitted that false relation arising from "confusion of tonality" is not caused by accidentals taken from relative keys, that is to say, the effect is not caused by any recognised chromatic chord. The cause of false relation occurring, as it generally does, between major and minor chords derived from the same root may be, as Riemann puts it, that we are "deceived into the belief that the same harmony is being sustained, and so the chromatic note only appears out of tune." What concerns us, however, is that, *musical notation apart*, the "chromatic note" referred to really represents a chromatic chord, consequently, when this chord sets up a modulation, I hold that there cannot be any effect of false relation, because there is no confusion of key. "Confusion of tonality" can only arise when there is the sense of hovering between two keys. There may be abruptness of transition owing to the prominence given to the chromatic note, but no "confusion" of a definite modulation is set up.

Judauska only allows a "cross-relation" in pure four-part writing where there is a modulation, simply because in that case there is an effect of false relation. It is admitted that the usually recognised chromatic chords do not set up the effect of false relation. One might, conversely, deduce from this that any foreign chord which can be introduced

without that effect might be duly classified as chromatic, and that not for that reason only, but because it is so easily followed by a diatonic chord as it is preceded. See examples—

Ex. 25.

Following Dr. Day and Sir G. Macfarren, some theorists allow that there is "no bad effect when the third of the first chord is either the root or the fifth of the second chord," the result of which rule is that we have the following chords, derived from the common chords of C, as not causing false relation, each of which, according to the above argument, I maintain should be classifiable as chromatic on that very ground:—

Ex. 26.

Key: C major, D minor, E minor, F major, G major, A minor.

The chords within brackets are the ones from which the examples are worked out.

It is probable that the rule works out farther than the author intended it; in any case, according to the above finding, no fewer than seven of the above chords are unrecognised as chromatic by followers of Dr. Day, while the first three are incompatible with a system which is founded on an accidental basis and the twelve-note chromatic scale, as they can undoubtedly be used without causing false relation, and without having to resort to enharmonic alteration.

Our scheme necessarily widens the ordinary view, but in all cases the ear must decide.

CHROMATIC MODERATION.—It has been customary to call the fundamental dissonance borrowed from the key of the dominant, and sub-dominant, by the appellation of supertonic and tonic respectively; but as a recognition of the enlarged boundaries of modern tonality would only lead to confusion if this principle were carried out, I would suggest that chromatic chords might be named as being "from the key of the dominant," or "from the key of the flat third," &c., this being, I think, more simple and consistent, and in order to facilitate chromatic analysis, I would suggest that the sign T might also be used to show the local relationship:—



Thus the plan of analysis advocated is not according to root or ground note, nor fortitious assumption of chromatic alteration of notes, but according to the tonality of the intruding element. To summarize the whole:—

SUMMARY.—We have in the principle of Chromatization one that I think goes to the root of the matter, and by which the chromatic element is diminished, so to speak, and classified in a scientific manner—(1) as chromatic locality, and (2) as the constituent chromatic chords. (3) Modera tonality as it exists, in all respects and purposes, is considered as possessing a dual aspect, and, consequently, (4) chords from the tonic minor are classified as modally related, and not as chromatic. (5) It is pointed out that where a chromatic chord acts as a foreign locality, the confirmatory chord (if any) should occupy an accented beat, the effect being strengthened by a simultaneous cadential movement of the bass; where no modulation ensues, the reverse conditions may be expected. (6) The true harmonic chromatic scale advocated is that which represents all tonalities which have any harmonic connection, i.e., have any note in common with the central scale and from which selections can be made to meet current needs. Any chord whatsoever belonging to the keys chromatically classified, whether triad or dominant dissonant, is available for chromatic use in the central key. (7) The relationship of keys (with duality of key as a basis) is based upon their inherent relationship as well as upon the lower effect of key disturbance, and not on the mathematical ratio of the tones. (8) The augmented sixth is shown to be derived from duality of key or mode, and not from a dual root. (9) Objection to upward resolution of the minor thirteenth in the augmented sixth is met by a new law

evolved, which, with the aid of *modal effect*, accounts for the irregular resolution of higher standards, operating especially where the dominant influence is weak or indefinite. (10) A means of distinguishing the *levelness of progress* is also mentioned. (11) The principles of *modal* and *harmonic substitution* are set forth. (12) It is shown that there cannot be *false relations* where there is modulation. Moreover, any single chord not causing false relation under the usual circumstances of such phenomena can be accounted chromatic; and, finally, (13) chromatic analysis is advocated according to the tenacity of the intruding element.

In conclusion allow me to thank you for your patience in listening to what is necessarily an abstract subject. With regard to the summary and classification of chromatic harmony, which I have put before you, allow me to reiterate that the results of the scheme should not in any way affect the usual student's course of harmony, but rather be considered as suitable for a philosophical aftercourse, when the why and the wherefore might be appropriately dealt with; in fact, as the foundation of what might be called "competent harmony." Perhaps I may also not inappropriately quote here an article by Sir Robert Parry in *Green*, in which he says "everything is admissible which is intellectually verifiable, and what is inadmissible is only relatively so. . . . The history of harmony is one of an ever-increasing richness of combination . . . and of enlargement of the bounds of the keys, so that a greater number and variety of chords can be used in relation to one another." Finally then, Mr. Chairman, Ladies, and Gentlemen, I shall be only too pleased if my efforts may have done something towards presenting a clearer view of the wonderful co-relationship which characterizes modern tonality.

DISCUSSION.

THE CHAIRMAN.—Our first duty, which is also a pleasure, is to thank Mr. Westerby for his very learned paper on a very abstract subject, and we have particularly to thank him for his kindness in reading his paper at such short notice. With regard to the subject, I confess I have no particular theories myself on chromaticism. There are some things with regard to the notation of chromaticism that sometimes are a little puzzling. For instance, in the chord before us, consisting of the notes (reckoning upwards) F sharp, A, C, and E flat, the

highest note is doubtless theoretically E flat; but in some cases the context or the conclusion might make me think of it and write it as D sharp simply as a matter of ear and feeling. If any lady or gentleman has any observations to make on the subject we should be very glad to hear them.

Mr. TOWNSEND.—I should like to ask the author whether he would be prepared to consider the question of these chords from the strictly equal temperament standpoint. It is a subject that I have thought about a good deal, and I think that if musicians would take the mathematical series of the tempered scale, expressed in a convenient form, and consider their chords and combinations in reference to the series, they would get interesting results. This series has been overlooked very much both by acousticians and musicians. If V represents the vibration number of any note whatever, and R the ratio of the mean semitone (which is, as you know, $\sqrt[12]{2}$), we get the following series VR^0 VR^1 VR^2 VR^3 up to VR^{12} , which is, of course, the octave of the first note. By means of this series we can express everything in equal temperament language. This series is perfectly general, but, for many purposes, it is convenient to refer all the sounds to the tonic, in which case we can represent the vibration number of the tonic by T , and we then have the tonic series—

$$TR^0 \quad TR^1 \quad TR^2 \quad TR^3 \quad \dots \dots \dots \quad TR^{12}$$

Then the first thing we get from that is a major scale by selecting the notes—

$$TR^0 \quad TR^2 \quad TR^4 \quad TR^6 \quad TR^8 \quad TR^{10} \quad TR^{12}$$

in which the arrangement of tones and semitones is perfectly clear. In the same way we can get from the same series any chord we want—e.g., the major triad of the tonic, which we may represent in the general series—

$$\begin{array}{ll} TR^0 & TR^0 \\ TR^2 & \text{or in the tonic series} \quad TR^2 \\ TR^4 & TR^4 \end{array}$$

Similarly, if we substitute TR^6 for TR^0 , we get the major tonic triad. If we like we can refer everything to the tonic. In that way the dominant chord would be represented by—

$$\begin{array}{c} TR^6 \\ TR^8 \\ TR^9 \end{array}$$

If we adopt this equal temperament system we get everything in simple form—twelve notes, twelve keys, twelve major

scales, twelve minor scales, twelve major triads, twelve minor triads, and so on. The only thing of which we do not get twelve is the diminished seventh chord, of which we only get three forms, because every other form is merely the inversion of one of the first three.

It seems to me that if these matters were examined from the equal temperament standard new ideas of music must arise. For instance, with regard to the question of key, certainly from the equal temperament standpoint there are only twelve keys. If you take any key you will find eight other keys which are nearly related to it, and only three which are remote. I will not pursue the subject, but I thought I should just like to make the suggestion, and I hope very much that musicians will consider some of these points.

Mr. WATSON.—All I have to say about it is that I considered the subject in my paper from the present standpoint. If one could agree to restrict the actual number of keys to twelve, it would simplify matters very considerably; but I am afraid that any alteration of the kind is somewhat Utopian.

Mr. TUNSTALL.—I have studied the question of temperament carefully, and it seems to me that practically the whole of music is based upon equal temperament, and if it be so, then the twelve-key theory is the true theory, and the unlimited number of keys theory is not true, and it surely must be for the good of music that what is the true theory should be thoroughly investigated.

Mr. STANLEY.—But surely when you come to an instrument with changeable notes like the violin, you cannot say it is based on equal temperament. The violinist plays according to feeling, and not according to theory.

The CHAIRMAN.—In certain cases the practice of violinists is contrary to theory—e.g., theoretically G sharp is lower than A flat, but the violinist usually plays it sharper if it is the leading note of the scale of A. The difference is very slight, but to stress a leading note up a little certainly does seem to put more significance into it. Chords also should do something of the same kind when they are being unaccompanied, and if they do not, their pitch falls.

Mr. TUNSTALL.—I think that has nothing really to do with the mathematical theory. My belief is that what the violinist does in that case is to make a note sharper or flatter because he feels he can get a better effect by doing so. I have spoken to one very eminent violinist, who says he plays by equal temperament, but others say they do, as you say, sharpen the leading note. That is the very opposite of the acoustical theory; and among those who talk a good deal about true

notation, apparently almost every one has got his own particular theory; and we are surely better off with one standard than with several different standards, in which every man is a law to himself. I understand that the violinist can produce certain effects, and beautiful effects, by modifying certain notes to please the ear, but I think that is an æsthetic and not a scientific principle.

A vote of thanks was then passed unanimously.

APPENDIX.

List of Contents for the last two years of the publications of the International Medical Society.

E. = English, F. = French, G. = German, I. = Italian

ZEITSCHRIFT (Monthly Journal).

In addition to the Leading Articles specified below, each number (about forty pages long) contains various subjects of information under the following heads:—(a) General news, (b) News connected with Anatomical Institutions, (c) Current Lectures, (d) Performances of musical works, (e) Proceedings of Societies, (f) Quizzes and Anagrams, (g) Book-reviews, (h) Lists of current articles from Journals, (i) Miscellaneous items. The whole of the content is in original matter.

FIRST YEAR.

PART 1.

GERMAN/GERMANIAN, 1900
Introductory (G)—G. Finckler (Berlin)
Music in England (E)—C. Maclean (London)
Bayreuth 1900 Postscript (G)—W. Kiechel (Berlin)
The Berlin Album (G)—M. Wolff (Berlin)
An old Lullaby (G)—J. Wolf (Berlin)

PART 2. DECEMBER, 1900.

Can the remains of ancient Greek music be now performed? (G)—G. Finckler (Berlin)
Medical life in Rome (G)—N. Finckler (Frankfurt)
Trains at the Wagner Theatre (F)—L. Desmet (Paris)
Review of "Cantatas"—Etain de science musicale" (F)—M. Luzz (Paris)

PART 3. JANUARY, 1901.

Vocal teaching in the higher schools (G)—E. Hübner (Berlin)
First complete List of Members.

PART 4. FEBRUARY, 1901.

Concert standards, the Concert-room (G)—G. G. Bennett (New York)
The editions of collected works of Handel and Bach (G)—H. Schiffers (Berlin)
The trial of Wagner's Servants (G)—J. Hoff (Berlin)
MILLET'S "Folies-à-la-Mode" (G)—E. Vogel (Vienna)

PART 5. MARCH, 1901.

Letter from Florence (I)—E. del Valle de Pao (Florence)
Music in England (E)—C. Maclean (London)
The Bach-Gluckenbadler and its reconstruction (G)—G. Finckler (Berlin)
The Fugueless Wagner Book (G)—H. Schiffers (Berlin)

PART 7. APRIL, 1901.

Music in Rome (G)—F. Span (Rome)
Concerts in Paris (F)—M. Chaussegny (Paris)

PART 8. MAY, 1901.

Vocal Teaching (F)—Lucia Terray-Heyrich (Geneva)
Concerts in Vienna (G)—R. Hirschfeld (Vienna)
Popular singing and Music over-production (G)—G. Mühlert (Berlin)
The promoters of Church music in Mexico (G)—N. Finckler (Frankfurt)
Second complete List of Members.

PART 9. JUNE, 1901.

Sigut Szegut an author (F)—A. Papp (Pest)
Music in Paris (F)—M. Chaussegny (Paris)
Opera in Vienna (G)—R. Hirschfeld (Vienna)
Vocal teaching in grammar schools (G)—H. Schiffers (Berlin)

- PART 10. JUNE, 1900.**
 J. P. E. Hartmann (G.)—W. Dehn (Copenhagen).
 Music in Spain (F.)—E. L. Chavari (Madrid).
 Popular Concerts (G.)—S. Larysch (Copenhagen).
 25th Congress of the Alliance Francaise Music (G.)—H. Goldschmidt (Berlin).
 Chamber-music Festival in Stuttgart (G.)—K. Grawsky (Stuttgart).
 Musical Festival in Bonn (G.)—M. Söllner (Berlin).
- PART 11. AUGUST, 1900.**
 Man's Eye in English Music (G.)—A. H. D. Pyndelquist (London).
 Musical Congress at the Fair Exhibition (F.)—M. Chassagny (Paris).
 Netherlands Volksmuziekvereniging Festival (G.)—W. M. F. Schmecher (Amsterdam).

- Musik Festival at Zurich (G.)—K. Hof (Zurich).
 The 14th Swiss Music Festival (G.)—T. Rattigler (Basel).
 Leipzig Festival of Pianos (G.)—G. H. Kross (Leipz.).
 Schubert's Mass in F minor (G.)—K. Grawsky (Stuttgart).

PART 12. SEPTEMBER, 1900.

- Opera in Russia (G.)—N. Finkova (Odessa).
 Music in England (E.)—C. Madras (London).
 The Music of the Oberammergau Passion Play (E.)—A. H. D. Pyndelquist (London).
 The Congress of Musical History (F.)—J. E. Fiedlermann (Paris).
 On Musical Magazine Literature (G.)—G. G. Bennett (New York).
- Total—267 pages, fully indexed.

SECOND YEAR.

PART 1. OCTOBER, 1900.

- Concerts in Russia (G.)—N. Finkova (Petersburg).
 Music in Stockholm (G.)—A. Lindgren (Stockholm).
 Music in Spain (F.)—E. L. Chavari (Madrid).
 The Scotch, ancient and modern (G.)—E. Parry (Paris).
 Chronological Catalogue of Handel's performances according to the Chrysander edition, 1685-1700 (G.)—E. Kross (Hamburg).

PART 2. NOVEMBER, 1900.

- The English Provincial Festivals (G.)—J. A. Fuller (London).
 Music at the Paris Exhibition (F.)—M. Chassagny (Paris).
 Leipzig Symposium—Concerts (1899-1900) (G.)—D. Schick (Leipzig).
 Musical conversation in children (G.)—C. H. Kahler (Götting).

PART 3. DECEMBER, 1900.

- The Glass and the Wine (F.)—W. Backley (Leipzig) (London).
 A collection of National Hymns (G.)—H. Abert (Berlin).
 Robert Schuberl (G.)—G. Beckmann (Bonn).

PART 4. JANUARY, 1901.

- On musical scholastic instruction (G.)—E. Sverstedt (Tromsø).
 The musical season in Paris (G.)—L. Desvres (Paris).

PART 5. FEBRUARY, 1901.

- The composer of the Marseillaise (F.)—J. Tarnay (Paris).
 Italian or Native Language? (G.)—G. G. Bennett (New York).
 Music in Spain (F.)—E. L. Chavari (Madrid).
 Musical life in Rome (G.)—F. Spitta (Rome).
 Concerts in Paris (F.)—M. Chassagny (Paris).

PART 6. MARCH, 1901.

- A classification of ecclesiastical and lay systems (G.)—E. Capella (Geneva).
 Giuseppe Verdi (G.)—H. Abert (Berlin).
 Third complete List of Members.

PART 7. APRIL, 1901.

- Music as an impression (G.)—E. Kross (Leipzig).
 Repertoire of Music Teachers in England (E.)—J. W. Molestation (Manchester).

PART 8. MAY, 1900

- Notice regarding Supplemental Volumes of the J. B. C.—
Old coats in old garments (G.)—
O. G. Sennock (New York).
An Essay on Henry Purcell (E.)—
W. Barclay Squire (London).
Sir John Stainer (E.)—C. Madson
(London).
Supplement to Supplement of
melodists, An (G.)—H. Capellen
(Düsseldorf).

PART 9. JUNE, 1900

- Hagen von Biber's Novena (E.)—
C. A. Barry (London).
Music and the teaching profession
(G.)—O. Finsinger (Berlin).
Sachs (G.)—K. K. Stephan
(Leipzig).

PART 10. JULY, 1901

- Woman and the musical education
of the young (G.)—Lucas Müller
(Darmstadt).

- Staudlin's New Opera. (E.)—C.
Madson (London).
Theories and Concepts in Paris (F.)
—M. Charnay (Paris).
70th Congress of the A. G. M. Inst.
Musik : Vienna (G.)—F. Sosa
(Halleberg).

PART 11. AUGUST, 1900

- Musical life in Bonn (G.)—K.
Finsinger (Petersburg).
Bach Festival at Bethlehem,
Pennsylvania (E.)—A. A. Satchel
(Ann Arbor).
Work in London (E.)—C. Madson
(London).

PART 12. SEPTEMBER, 1901

- Haydn's Impressions (G.)—K.
Sachs (Berlin).
The London Opera Season (E.)—
J. A. Fuller-Maitland (London).
A Traveller's notes from Delft (E.)
—C. F. Alaby-Williams (London).

Total—912 pages, fully indexed.

SAMMELBÄNDE (Quarterly Magazine).

FIRST YEAR.

- PART 1. OCTOBER-DECEMBER 1899.
A Chapter on comparative music-
ology (G.)—O. Finsinger
(Berlin).
Austrian Church Music (G.)—K.
Sachs (Berlin).
The music theory of Johannes de
Cuculo (G.)—J. Wolf (Berlin).
Dr. Handel's chamber-works (G.)—
M. Seiffert (Berlin).
Mozart's life in Freyburg (G.)—M.
Seiffert (Berlin).
Bach and his time (G.)—J. Wolf
(Berlin).

PART 2. JANUARY-MARCH 1900

- Swedish musical history, 1840-1870
(G.)—F. Sosa (Berlin).
Dr. Schütz (G.)—M. Seiffert
(Berlin).
Hamburg Opera Debates, 1898-
1900 (G.)—W. Krieger (Berlin).

- W. F. Bach's cantatas in Ger-
many (G.)—W. Sapp (Darm-
stadt).
Berthold's Bands in B. B. (G.)—
E. Mandycanovsk (Vienna).
On Programme music (G.)—E.
Hilbermann (Frankfurt).
An unknown music collection (G.)
—E. Schuler (Vienna).

PART 3. APRIL-JUNE 1900.

- The new Aristonormals in Ger-
many (G.)—H. Scherr (Berlin).
Studies in Icelandic Music (G.)—
A. Hammrich (Copenhagen).
Carlisle musical life late of the
18th century (F.)—F. Polak
(Halle).
Sensel and Gungel's Schicks (G.)
—A. Weyro (Breslau).
Gottschalk as Organist (G.)—A.
Mayer-Rothsch (Strasbourg).
J. V. Mayer's Ständchen (G.)—J.
Scha (Berlin).

PART 4. JULY-SEPTEMBER, 1900.
 History of Schismatism (G.)—G. Lange (Breslau).
 Powell and Milesa Manotti (E.)—J. Fiedrich (Bjeloje).
 Minerva, the Tritonidae of the Caucasus (G.)—B. Engman (Uppsala).
 Record of medical life in Italy (G.)—C. G. Sisson (New York).

Bach's Masterpieces and the Protestant Faith (G.)—F. Bachmann (Breslau).
 Sir Tristram Colburn (G.)—J. Wolf (Breslau).
 Water in Spanish and Japanese (G.)—L. Gross (Berlin).

Total—87 pages, fully indexed.

SECOND YEAR.

PART 1. OCTOBER-DECEMBER, 1900.

Donatelli and the various writings of G. Egon Della. (G.)—Cecilia Spitzer (London).
 Italian opera, professors in the 17th Century (G.)—H. Gutschmidt (Berlin).
 M. Weckmann and the Medical College at Bamberg (G.)—M. Gollner (Breslau).
 The Medical-Historical Importance of the old Bohemian University School (G.)—O. Schmidt (Dresden).
 The Novelle has its popular French music (F.)—I. Kroll (Helmstedt).
 History of Music in Finland (G.)—H. Pudas (Breslau).
 Faint an old Elway (G.)—G. Trichter and K. Furchard (Berlin).
 Discoveries on the Tristram Colburn (G.)—G. Adler and O. Koller (Vienna) and J. Wolf (Breslau).

PART 2. JANUARY-MARCH, 1901.

Excursions into the origin of the system of the century (G.)—Anton Schilling (London).
 The Elbe Festival, or the First Striped Drums on the Death and Accompaniment of the Virgin (F.)—B. Pudel (Munich).
 Three Claves-composition, wrongly ascribed to Bach (G.)—R. Bachmayer (Dresden).
 The development of music in Spain in the first half of the 19th Century (G.)—M. Probst (St. Petersburg).
 Settings of the Italian Mass (E.)—C. B. Edgar (London).
 The new "Choralbuch" of E. v. Litzmann (G.)—H. M. Kunkel (Potsdam).

Excursions on the Tristram Colburn (G.)—G. Adler (Vienna).

PART 3. APRIL-JUNE, 1901.

An unprinted Letter by Paulin (1802) on music (G.)—H. Albert (Breslau).
 Notes on an unclassified Collection of English 17th Century Music (G.)—W. Barclay (Square (London)).
 J. H. Adler, a bio-bibliographical sketch (G.)—J. Wolf (Vienna).
 Johann Christian Bach (G.)—M. Schwarz (Breslau).
 J. F. E. Hartmann (G.)—A. Baumgarten (Göttingen).
 Translation together Danish by L. Fritzen von Liliensand.
 Suggestions towards a Theory of Harmonic Equivalents (E.)—W. H. Hudson (London).

PART 4. JULY-SEPTEMBER, 1901.

On the Chinese Musical System (F.)—A. Duchassaing (Paris).
 Swedish School songs in the Middle Ages etc. (G.)—T. Nothel (Lund).
 Some documents regarding the Music of the Grande Église de Rou (F.)—J. Fiescher (de Paris).
 A set of Bach's grand chorals (G.)—J. Fuldner-Matthias (London).
 A Music-Composers (G.)—F. Spitz (Rome).
 Gattaioli and J. A. Schuler (G.)—B. Kroll (Breslau).
 A "Der Hof" of the Swiss Alps (G.)—A. Schering (Leipzig).
 Polish Exports No. 1—F. Garavewald (Vienna).
 The Old Hill Manuscript (E.)—W. Barclay Square (London).

Total—222 pages, fully indexed.

3 2044 044 288 520



